The Bill is divided into three volumes. Volume I contains Clauses 1 to 482. Volume II contains Clauses 483 to 1000. Volume III contains the remaining Clauses and the Schedules.

CONTENTS

PART 1

GENERAL INTRODUCTORY PROVISIONS

Companies and Companies Acts

1 Companies
2 The Companies Acts

Types of company

3 Limited and unlimited companies
4 Private and public companies
5 Companies limited by guarantee and having share capital
6 Community interest companies

PART 2

COMPANY FORMATION

General

7 Method of forming company
8 Memorandum of association

Requirements for registration

9 Registration documents
10 Statement of capital and initial shareholdings
11 Statement of guarantee
12 Statement of proposed officers
13 Statement of compliance

Registration and its effect

14 Registration
15 Issue of certificate of incorporation
16 Effect of registration
PART 3
A COMPANY’S CONSTITUTION

CHAPTER 1
INTRODUCTORY

17 A company’s constitution

CHAPTER 2
ARTICLES OF ASSOCIATION

General

18 Articles of association
19 Power of Secretary of State to prescribe model articles
20 Default application of model articles

Alteration of articles

21 Amendment of articles
22 Entrenched provisions of the articles
23 Notice to registrar in case of entrenched provisions
24 Notice to registrar of removal of entrenched provisions
25 Effect of alteration of articles on company’s members
26 Registrar to be sent copy of amended articles
27 Registrar’s notice to comply in case of failure with respect to amended articles

Supplementary

28 Existing companies: provisions of memorandum treated as provisions of articles

CHAPTER 3
RESOLUTIONS AND AGREEMENTS AFFECTING A COMPANY’S CONSTITUTION

29 Resolutions and agreements affecting a company’s constitution
30 Copies of resolutions or agreements to be forwarded to and recorded by registrar
31 Resolutions and agreements to be embodied in or attached to issued copies of articles

CHAPTER 4
MISCELLANEOUS AND SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISIONS

Statement of company’s objects

32 Statement of company’s objects
Other provisions with respect to a company’s constitution

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Constitutional documents to be provided to members</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Effect of company’s constitution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Notice to registrar where company’s constitution altered by enactment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Notice to registrar where company’s constitution altered by order</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Supplementary provisions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>Right to participate in profits otherwise than as member void</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>Application to single member companies of enactments and rules of law</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PART 4

A COMPANY’S CAPACITY AND RELATED MATTERS

Capacity of company and power of directors to bind it

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>A company’s capacity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Power of directors to bind the company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>Constitutional limitations: transactions involving directors or their associates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>Constitutional limitations: companies that are charities</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Formalities of doing business under the law of England and Wales or Northern Ireland

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>Company contracts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>Execution of documents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>Common seal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>Execution of deeds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>Execution of deeds or other documents by attorney</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>Authentication of documents</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Formalities of doing business under the law of Scotland

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>Execution of documents by companies</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Other matters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Official seal for use abroad</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>Official seal for share certificates etc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>Pre-incorporation contracts, deeds and obligations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>Bills of exchange and promissory notes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PART 5

A COMPANY’S NAME

CHAPTER 1

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Prohibited names

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>Prohibited names</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sensitive words and expressions

55 Names suggesting connection with government or public authority
56 Other sensitive words or expressions
57 Duty to seek comments of government department or other specified body

Permitted characters etc

58 Permitted characters etc

CHAPTER 2

INDICATIONS OF COMPANY TYPE OR LEGAL FORM

Required indications for limited companies

59 Public limited companies
60 Private limited companies
61 Exemption from requirement as to use of “limited”
62 Continuation of existing exemption: companies limited by shares
63 Continuation of existing exemption: companies limited by guarantee
64 Exempt company: restriction on amendment of articles
65 Power to direct change of name in case of company ceasing to be entitled to exemption

Inappropriate use of indications of company type or legal form

66 Inappropriate use of indications of company type or legal form

CHAPTER 3

SIMILARITY TO OTHER NAMES

Similarity to other name on registrar’s index

67 Name not to be the same as another in the index
68 Power to direct change of name in case of similarity to existing name
69 Direction to change name: supplementary provisions

Similarity to other name in which person has goodwill

70 Objection to company’s registered name
71 Company names adjudicators
72 Procedural rules
73 Order requiring name to be changed
74 Appeal from adjudicator’s decision

CHAPTER 4

OTHER POWERS OF THE SECRETARY OF STATE

75 Provision of misleading information etc
76 Misleading indication of activities
CHAPTER 5

CHANGE OF NAME

77 Change of name
78 Change of name by special resolution
79 Change of name by means provided for in company’s articles
80 Change of name: registration and issue of new certificate of incorporation
81 Change of name: effect

CHAPTER 6

TRADING DISCLOSURES

82 Requirement to disclose company name etc
83 Civil consequences of failure to make required disclosure
84 Criminal consequences of failure to make required disclosures
85 Minor variations in form of name to be left out of account

PART 6

A COMPANY’S REGISTERED OFFICE

General

86 A company’s registered office
87 Change of address of registered office

Welsh companies

88 Welsh companies

PART 7

RE-REGISTRATION AS A MEANS OF ALTERING A COMPANY’S STATUS

Introductory

89 Alteration of status by re-registration

Private company becoming public

90 Re-registration of private company as public
91 Requirements as to share capital
92 Requirements as to net assets
93 Recent allotment of shares for non-cash consideration
94 Application and accompanying documents
95 Statement of proposed secretary
96 Issue of certificate of incorporation on re-registration

Public company becoming private

97 Re-registration of public company as private limited company
98 Application to court to cancel resolution
99 Notice to registrar of court application or order
100 Application and accompanying documents
101 Issue of certificate of incorporation on re-registration

Private limited company becoming unlimited
102 Re-registration of private limited company as unlimited
103 Application and accompanying documents
104 Issue of certificate of incorporation on re-registration

Unlimited private company becoming limited
105 Re-registration of unlimited company as limited
106 Application and accompanying documents
107 Issue of certificate of incorporation on re-registration
108 Statement of capital required where company already has share capital

Public company becoming private and unlimited
109 Re-registration of public company as private and unlimited
110 Application and accompanying documents
111 Issue of certificate of incorporation on re-registration

PART 8
A COMPANY’S MEMBERS

CHAPTER 1
THE MEMBERS OF A COMPANY

112 The members of a company

CHAPTER 2
REGISTER OF MEMBERS

General

113 Register of members
114 Register to be kept available for inspection
115 Index of members
116 Rights to inspect and require copies
117 Register of members: response to request for inspection or copy
118 Register of members: refusal of inspection or default in providing copy
119 Register of members: offences in connection with request for or disclosure of information
120 Information as to state of register and index
121 Removal of entries relating to former members

Special cases

122 Share warrants
123 Single member companies
124 Company holding its own shares as treasury shares

Supplementary

125 Power of court to rectify register
126 Trusts not to be entered on register
127 Register to be evidence
128 Time limit for claims arising from entry in register

CHAPTER 3

OVERSEAS BRANCH REGISTERS

129 Overseas branch registers
130 Notice of opening of overseas branch register
131 Keeping of overseas branch register
132 Register or duplicate to be kept available for inspection in UK
133 Transactions in shares registered in overseas branch register
134 Jurisdiction of local courts
135 Discontinuance of overseas branch register

CHAPTER 4

PROHIBITION ON SUBSIDIARY BEING MEMBER OF ITS HOLDING COMPANY

General prohibition

136 Prohibition on subsidiary being a member of its holding company
137 Shares acquired before prohibition became applicable

Subsidiary acting as personal representative or trustee

138 Subsidiary acting as personal representative or trustee
139 Interests to be disregarded: residual interest under pension scheme or employees’ share scheme
140 Interests to be disregarded: employer’s rights of recovery under pension scheme or employees’ share scheme

Subsidiary acting as dealer in securities

141 Subsidiary acting as authorised dealer in securities
142 Protection of third parties in other cases where subsidiary acting as dealer in securities

Supplementary

143 Application of provisions to companies not limited by shares
144 Application of provisions to nominees
PART 9

EXERCISE OF MEMBERS’ RIGHTS

Effect of provisions in company’s articles
145 Effect of provisions of articles as to enjoyment or exercise of members’ rights

Information rights
146 Traded companies: nomination of persons to enjoy information rights
147 Information rights: form in which copies to be provided
148 Termination or suspension of nomination
149 Information as to possible rights in relation to voting
150 Information rights: status of rights
151 Information rights: power to amend

Exercise of rights where shares held on behalf of others
152 Exercise of rights where shares held on behalf of others: exercise in different ways
153 Exercise of rights where shares held on behalf of others: members’ requests

PART 10

A COMPANY’S DIRECTORS

CHAPTER 1

APPOINTMENT AND REMOVAL OF DIRECTORS

Requirement to have directors
154 Companies required to have directors
155 Companies required to have at least one director who is a natural person
156 Direction requiring company to make appointment

Appointment
157 Minimum age for appointment as director
158 Power to provide for exceptions from minimum age requirement
159 Existing under-age directors
160 Appointment of directors of public company to be voted on individually
161 Validity of acts of directors

Register of directors, etc
162 Register of directors
163 Particulars of directors to be registered: individuals
164 Particulars of directors to be registered: corporate directors and firms
165 Register of directors’ residential addresses
166 Particulars of directors to be registered: power to make regulations
167 Duty to notify registrar of changes
168 Application of provisions to shadow directors
Removal

169 Resolution to remove director
170 Director’s right to protest against removal

CHAPTER 2

GENERAL DUTIES OF DIRECTORS

Introductory

171 Scope and nature of general duties

The general duties

172 Duty to act within powers
173 Duty to promote the success of the company
174 Duty to exercise independent judgment
175 Duty to exercise reasonable care, skill and diligence
176 Duty to avoid conflicts of interest
177 Duty not to accept benefits from third parties
178 Duty to declare interest in proposed transaction or arrangement

Supplementary provisions

179 Civil consequences of breach of general duties
180 Cases within more than one of the general duties
181 Consent, approval or authorisation by members
182 Modification of provisions in relation to charitable companies

CHAPTER 3

DECLARATION OF INTEREST IN EXISTING TRANSACTION OR ARRANGEMENT

183 Declaration of interest in existing transaction or arrangement
184 Offence of failure to declare interest
185 Declaration made by notice in writing
186 General notice treated as sufficient declaration
187 Declaration of interest in case of company with sole director
188 Declaration of interest in existing transaction by shadow director

CHAPTER 4

transactions with directors requiring approval of members

Service contracts

189 Directors’ long-term service contracts: requirement of members’ approval
190 Directors’ long-term service contracts: civil consequences of contravention

Substantial property transactions

191 Substantial property transactions: requirement of members’ approval
192 Meaning of “substantial”
193 Exception for transactions with members or other group companies
194 Exception in case of company in winding up or administration
195 Exception for transactions on recognised investment exchange
196 Property transactions: civil consequences of contravention
197 Property transactions: effect of subsequent affirmation

Loans, quasi-loans and credit transactions

198 Loans or quasi-loans: requirement of members’ approval
199 Meaning of “quasi-loan” and related expressions
200 Credit transactions: requirement of members’ approval
201 Meaning of “credit transaction”
202 Related arrangements: requirement of members’ approval
203 Exception for expenditure on company business
204 Exception for expenditure on defending proceedings etc
205 Exception for expenditure in connection with regulatory action or investigation
206 Exceptions for minor and business transactions
207 Exceptions for intra-group transactions
208 Exceptions for money-lending companies
209 Other relevant transactions or arrangements
210 The value of transactions and arrangements
211 The person for whom a transaction or arrangement is entered into
212 Loans etc: civil consequences of contravention
213 Loans etc: effect of subsequent affirmation

Payments for loss of office

214 Payments for loss of office
215 Amounts taken to be payments for loss of office
216 Payment by company: requirement of members’ approval
217 Payment in connection with transfer of undertaking etc: requirement of members’ approval
218 Payment in connection with share transfer: requirement of members’ approval
219 Exception for payments in discharge of legal obligations etc
220 Exception for small payments
221 Payments made without approval: civil consequences

Supplementary

222 Transactions requiring members’ approval: application of provisions to shadow directors
223 Transactions requiring members’ approval: nature of resolution required
224 Approval by written resolution: accidental failure to send memorandum
225 Cases where approval is required under more than one provision
226 Requirement of consent of Charity Commission: companies that are charities

CHAPTER 5

DIRECTORS’ SERVICE CONTRACTS

227 Directors’ service contracts
228 Copy of contract or memorandum of terms to be available for inspection
229 Right of member to inspect and request copy
230 Directors’ service contracts: application of provisions to shadow directors

CHAPTER 6

CONTRACTS WITH SOLE MEMBERS WHO ARE DIRECTORS

231 Contract with sole member who is also a director

CHAPTER 7

DIRECTORS’ LIABILITIES

Provision protecting directors from liability

232 Provisions protecting directors from liability
233 Provision of insurance
234 Qualifying third party indemnity provision
235 Qualifying pension scheme indemnity provision
236 Qualifying indemnity provision to be disclosed in directors’ report
237 Copy of qualifying indemnity provision to be available for inspection
238 Right of member to inspect and request copy

Ratification of acts giving rise to liability

239 Ratification of acts of directors

CHAPTER 8

DIRECTORS’ RESIDENTIAL ADDRESSES: PROTECTION FROM DISCLOSURE

240 Protected information
241 Protected information: restriction on use or disclosure by company
242 Protected information: restriction on use or disclosure by registrar
243 Permitted use or disclosure by the registrar
244 Disclosure under court order
245 Circumstances in which registrar may put address on the public record
246 Putting the address on the public record

CHAPTER 9

SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISIONS

Provision for employees on cessation or transfer of business

247 Power to make provision for employees on cessation or transfer of business

Records of meetings of directors

248 Minutes of directors’ meetings
249 Minutes as evidence

Meaning of "director" and "shadow director"

250 “Director”
251 “Shadow director”

Other definitions
252 Persons connected with a director
253 Members of a director’s family
254 Director “connected with” a body corporate
255 Director “controlling” a body corporate
256 Associated bodies corporate
257 References to company’s constitution

General
258 Power to increase financial limits
259 Transactions under foreign law

Part 11
Derivative claims and proceedings by members

Chapter 1
Derivative claims in England and Wales or Northern Ireland
260 Derivative claims
261 Application for permission to continue derivative claim
262 Application for permission to continue claim as a derivative claim
263 Whether permission to be given
264 Application for permission to continue derivative claim brought by another member

Chapter 2
Derivative proceedings in Scotland
265 Derivative proceedings
266 Requirement for leave and notice
267 Application to continue proceedings as derivative proceedings
268 Granting of leave
269 Application by member to be substituted for member pursuing derivative proceedings

Part 12
Company secretaries

General
270 Private company not required to have secretary
271 Public company required to have secretary
272 Direction requiring public company to appoint secretary
Provisions applying to secretaries of public companies

273 Qualifications of secretaries of public companies
274 Discharge of functions where office vacant or secretary unable to act
275 Duty to keep register of secretaries
276 Duty to notify registrar of changes

Supplementary

277 Particulars of secretaries to be registered: individuals
278 Particulars of secretaries to be registered: corporate secretaries and firms
279 Particulars of secretaries to be registered: power to make regulations
280 Acts done by person in dual capacity

PART 13

AUTHORISED SIGNATORIES

281 Authorised signatories
282 Appointment of authorised signatories
283 Minimum age for appointment as authorised signatory
284 Register of authorised signatories
285 Particulars to be registered
286 Particulars to be registered: power to make regulations
287 Duty to notify registrar of changes

PART 14

RESOLUTIONS AND MEETINGS

CHAPTER 1

GENERAL PROVISIONS ABOUT RESOLUTIONS

288 Resolutions
289 Ordinary resolutions
290 Special resolutions
291 Votes: general rules
292 Votes: specific requirements
293 Votes of joint holders of shares
294 Effect of provision in company’s articles as to admissibility of votes

CHAPTER 2

WRITTEN RESOLUTIONS

General provisions about written resolutions

295 Written resolutions of private companies
296 Eligible members

Circulation of written resolutions

297 Circulation date
298 Circulation of written resolutions proposed by directors
299 Members’ power to require circulation of written resolution
300 Circulation of written resolution proposed by members
301 Expenses of circulation
302 Application not to circulate members’ statement

Agreeing to written resolutions

303 Procedure for signifying agreement to written resolution
304 Period for agreeing to written resolution

Supplementary

305 Sending documents relating to written resolutions by electronic means
306 Publication of written resolution on website
307 Relationship between this Chapter and provisions of company’s articles

CHAPTER 3
RESOLUTIONS AT MEETINGS

General provisions about resolutions at meetings

308 Resolutions at general meetings

Calling meetings

309 Directors’ power to call general meetings
310 Members’ power to require directors to call general meeting
311 Directors’ duty to call meetings required by members
312 Power of members to call meeting at company’s expense
313 Power of court to order meeting

Notice of meetings

314 Notice required of general meeting
315 Manner in which notice to be given
316 Publication of notice of meeting on website
317 Persons entitled to receive notice of meetings
318 Contents of notices of meetings
319 Resolution requiring special notice
320 Accidental failure to give notice of resolution or meeting

Members’ statements

321 Members’ power to require circulation of statements
322 Company’s duty to circulate members’ statement
323 Expenses of circulating members’ statement
324 Application not to circulate members’ statement

Procedure at meetings

325 Quorum at meetings
326 Chairman of meeting
327 Declaration by chairman on a show of hands
328 Right to demand a poll
329 Voting on a poll
330 Representation of corporations at meetings

Proxies
331 Rights to appoint proxies
332 Notice of meeting to contain statement of rights
333 Company-sponsored invitations to appoint proxies
334 Notice required of appointment of proxy etc
335 Chairing meetings
336 Right of proxy to demand a poll
337 Notice required of termination of proxy’s authority
338 Saving for more extensive rights conferred by articles

Adjourned meetings
339 Resolution passed at adjourned meeting

Electronic communications
340 Sending documents relating to meetings etc in electronic form

Application to class meetings
341 Application to class meetings
342 Application to class meetings: companies without a share capital

CHAPTER 4
PUBLIC COMPANIES: ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR AGMs
343 Public companies: annual general meeting
344 Public companies: notice of AGM
345 Public companies: members’ power to require circulation of resolutions for AGMs
346 Public companies: company’s duty to circulate members’ resolutions for AGMs
347 Public companies: expenses of circulating members’ resolutions for AGM

CHAPTER 5
ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR QUOTED COMPANIES

Website publication of poll results
348 Results of poll to be made available on website

Independent report on poll
349 Members’ power to require independent report on poll
350 Appointment of independent assessor
351 Independence requirement
352 Meaning of “associate”
353 Effect of appointment of a partnership
354 The independent assessor’s report
355 Rights of independent assessor: right to attend meeting etc
356 Rights of independent assessor: right to information
357 Offences relating to provision of information
358 Information to be made available on website

Supplementary
359 Application of provisions to class meetings
360 Requirements as to website availability
361 Power to limit or extend the types of company to which provisions of this Chapter apply

CHAPTER 6
RECORDS OF RESOLUTIONS AND MEETINGS
362 Records of resolutions and meetings etc
363 Records as evidence of resolutions etc
364 Records of decisions by sole member
365 Inspection of records of resolutions and meetings
366 Records of resolutions and meetings of class of members

CHAPTER 7
SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISIONS
367 Meaning of “quoted company”

PART 15
CONTROL OF POLITICAL DONATIONS AND EXPENDITURE

Introductory
368 Introductory

Donations and expenditure to which this Part applies
369 Political parties, organisations etc to which this Part applies
370 Meaning of “political donation”
371 Meaning of “political expenditure”

Authorisation required for donations or expenditure
372 Authorisation required for donations or expenditure
373 Form of authorising resolution
374 Majority required for authorising resolution
375 Period for which resolution has effect

Remedies in case of unauthorised donations or expenditure
376 Liability of directors in case of unauthorised donation or expenditure
377 Enforcement of directors’ liabilities by shareholder action
378 Costs of shareholder action
379 Information for purposes of shareholder action

Exemptions

380 Trade unions
381 Subscription for membership of trade association
382 All-party parliamentary groups
383 Political expenditure exempted by order
384 Donations not amounting to more than £5,000 in any twelve month period

Supplementary provisions

385 Minor definitions

PART 16

ACCOUNTS AND REPORTS

CHAPTER 1

INTRODUCTION

General

386 Scheme of this Part

Companies subject to the small companies regime

387 Companies subject to the small companies regime
388 Companies qualifying as small: general
389 Companies qualifying as small: parent companies
390Companies excluded from the small companies regime

Quoted and unquoted companies

391 Quoted and unquoted companies

CHAPTER 2

ACCOUNTING RECORDS

392 Duty to keep accounting records
393 Duty to keep accounting records: offence
394 Where and for how long records to be kept
395 Where and for how long records to be kept: offences

CHAPTER 3

A COMPANY’S FINANCIAL YEAR

396 A company’s financial year
397 Accounting reference periods and accounting reference date
398 Alteration of accounting reference date

CHAPTER 4

ANNUAL ACCOUNTS

General
399 Accounts to give true and fair view

Individual accounts
400 Duty to prepare individual accounts
401 Individual accounts: applicable accounting framework
402 Companies Act individual accounts
403 IAS individual accounts

Group accounts: small companies
404 Option to prepare group accounts

Group accounts: other companies
405 Duty to prepare group accounts
406 Exemption for company included in EEA group accounts of larger group
407 Exemption for company included in non-EEA group accounts of larger group
408 Exemption if no subsidiary undertakings need be included in the consolidation

Group accounts: general
409 Group accounts: applicable accounting framework
410 Companies Act group accounts
411 Companies Act group accounts: subsidiary undertakings included in the consolidation
412 IAS group accounts
413 Consistency of financial reporting within group
414 Individual profit and loss account where group accounts prepared

Information to be given in notes to the accounts
415 Information about related undertakings
416 Information about related undertakings: alternative compliance
417 Information about employee numbers and costs
418 Information about directors’ benefits: remuneration
419 Information about directors’ benefits: advances, credit and guarantees

Approval and signing of accounts
420 Approval and signing of accounts
CHAPTER 5

DIRECTORS’ REPORT

Directors’ report

421 Duty to prepare directors’ report
422 Contents of directors’ report: general
423 Contents of directors’ report: business review
424 Contents of directors’ report: statement as to disclosure to auditors
425 Approval and signing of directors’ report

CHAPTER 6

QUOTED COMPANIES: DIRECTORS’ REMUNERATION REPORT

426 Duty to prepare directors’ remuneration report
427 Contents of directors’ remuneration report
428 Approval and signing of directors’ remuneration report

CHAPTER 7

PUBLICATION OF ACCOUNTS AND REPORTS

Duty to circulate copies of accounts and reports

429 Duty to circulate copies of annual accounts and reports
430 Time allowed for sending out copies of accounts and reports
431 Default in sending out copies of accounts and reports: offences

Option to provide summary financial statement

432 Option to provide summary financial statement
433 Form and contents of summary financial statement: unquoted companies
434 Form and contents of summary financial statement: quoted companies
435 Summary financial statements: offences

Quoted companies: requirements as to website publication

436 Quoted companies: annual accounts and reports to be made available on website
437 Quoted companies: preliminary statement of results to be made available on website
438 Requirements as to website availability

Right of member or debenture holder to demand copies of accounts and reports

439 Right of member or debenture holder to copies of accounts and reports: unquoted companies
440 Right of member or debenture holder to copies of accounts and reports: quoted companies
Requirements in connection with publication of accounts and reports
441 Name of signatory to be stated in published copies of accounts and reports
442 Requirements in connection with publication of statutory accounts
443 Requirements in connection with publication of non-statutory accounts
444 Meaning of “publication” in relation to accounts and reports

CHAPTER 8
PUBLIC COMPANIES: LAYING OF ACCOUNTS AND REPORTS BEFORE GENERAL MEETING
445 Public companies: laying of accounts and reports before general meeting
446 Public companies: offence of failure to lay accounts and reports

CHAPTER 9
QUOTED COMPANIES: MEMBERS’ APPROVAL OF DIRECTORS’ REMUNERATION REPORT
447 Quoted companies: members’ approval of directors’ remuneration report
448 Quoted companies: offences in connection with procedure for approval

CHAPTER 10
FILING OF ACCOUNTS AND REPORTS

Duty to file accounts and reports
449 Duty to file accounts and reports with the registrar
450 Period allowed for filing accounts
451 Calculation of period allowed

Filing obligations of different descriptions of company
452 Filing obligations of companies subject to small companies regime
453 Filing obligations of medium-sized companies
454 Filing obligations of unquoted companies
455 Filing obligations of quoted companies
456 Unlimited companies exempt from obligation to file accounts

Requirements where abbreviated accounts delivered
457 Special auditor’s report where abbreviated accounts delivered
458 Approval and signing of abbreviated accounts

Failure to file accounts and reports
459 Default in filing accounts and reports: offences
460 Default in filing accounts and reports: court order
461 Civil penalty for failure to file accounts and reports
CHAPTER 11

REVISION OF DEFECTIVE ACCOUNTS AND REPORTS

Voluntary revision

462 Voluntary revision of accounts etc

Secretary of State’s notice

463 Secretary of State’s notice in respect of accounts or reports

Application to court

464 Application to court in respect of defective accounts or reports
465 Other persons authorised to apply to the court
466 Disclosure of information by tax authorities

Power of authorised person to require documents etc

467 Power of authorised person to require documents, information and explanations
468 Restrictions on disclosure of information obtained under compulsory powers
469 Permitted disclosure of information obtained under compulsory powers
470 Power to amend categories of permitted disclosure

CHAPTER 12

SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISIONS

Liability for false or misleading statements in reports

471 Liability for false or misleading statements in reports

Accounting and reporting standards

472 Accounting standards

Companies qualifying as medium-sized

473 Companies qualifying as medium-sized: general
474 Companies qualifying as medium-sized: parent companies
475 Companies excluded from being treated as medium-sized

General power to make further provision about accounts and reports

476 General power to make further provision about accounts and reports

Other supplementary provisions

477 Preparation and filing of accounts in euros
478 Power to apply provisions to banking partnerships
479 Meaning of “annual accounts” and related expressions
480 Notes to the accounts
481 Parliamentary procedure for certain regulations under this Part
482 Minor definitions

PART 17

AUDIT

CHAPTER 1

REQUIREMENT FOR AUDITED ACCOUNTS

Requirement for audited accounts
483 Requirement for audited accounts
484 Right of members to require audit

Exemption from audit: small companies
485 Small companies: conditions for exemption from audit
486 Companies excluded from small companies exemption
487 Availability of small companies exemption in case of group company

Exemption from audit: dormant companies
488 Dormant companies: conditions for exemption from audit
489 Companies excluded from dormant companies exemption

Exemption from audit: certain charities
490 Small charities: independent examiner’s report in lieu of audit
491 Companies excluded from report exemption
492 Availability of report exemption in case of group company
493 The independent examiner’s report
494 The independent examiner
495 Rights of independent examiner

Companies subject to public sector audit
496 Non-profit-making companies subject to public sector audit
497 Scottish public sector companies: audit by Auditor General for Scotland

General power of amendment by regulations
498 General power of amendment by regulations

CHAPTER 2

APPOINTMENT OF AUDITORS

Private companies
499 Appointment of auditors of private company: general
500 Appointment of auditors of private company: default power of Secretary of State
501 Term of office of auditors of private company
502 Prevention by members of deemed re-appointment of auditor

Public companies
503 Appointment of auditors of public company: general
504 Appointment of auditors of public company: default power of Secretary of State
505 Term of office of auditors of public company

General provisions
506 Fixing of auditor’s remuneration
507 Disclosure of terms of audit appointment
508 Disclosure of services provided by auditor or associates and related remuneration

CHAPTER 3
FUNCTIONS OF AUDITOR

Auditor’s report
509 Auditor’s report on company’s annual accounts
510 Auditor’s report on directors’ report
511 Auditor’s report on auditable part of directors’ remuneration report

Duties and rights of auditors
512 Duties of auditor
513 Auditor’s general right to information
514 Auditor’s right to information from overseas subsidiaries
515 Auditor’s rights to information: offences
516 Auditor’s rights in relation to resolutions and meetings

Signature of auditor’s report
517 Signature of auditor’s report
518 Senior statutory auditor
519 Names to be stated in published copies of auditor’s report
520 Circumstances in which names may be omitted

Offences in connection with auditor’s report
521 Offences in connection with auditor’s report
522 Guidance for regulatory and prosecuting authorities: England, Wales and Northern Ireland
523 Guidance for regulatory authorities: Scotland
CHAPTER 4

REMOVAL, RESIGNATION, ETC OF AUDITORS

Removal of auditor

524 Resolution removing auditor from office
525 Special notice required for resolution removing auditor from office
526 Notice to registrar of resolution removing auditor from office
527 Rights of auditor who has been removed from office

Failure to re-appoint auditor

528 Failure to re-appoint auditor: special procedure required for written resolution
529 Failure to re-appoint auditor: special notice required for resolution at general meeting

Resignation of auditor

530 Resignation of auditor
531 Notice to registrar of resignation of auditor
532 Rights of resigning auditor

Statement by auditor on ceasing to hold office

533 Statement by auditor to be deposited with company
534 Company’s duties in relation to statement
535 Copy of statement to be sent to registrar
536 Duty of auditor to notify appropriate audit authority
537 Duty of company to notify appropriate audit authority
538 Information to be given to accounting authorities
539 Meaning of “appropriate audit authority” and “major audit”

Supplementary

540 Effect of casual vacancies

CHAPTER 5

QUOTED COMPANIES: RIGHT OF MEMBERS TO RAISE AUDIT CONCERNS AT ACCOUNTS MEETING

541 Members’ power to require website publication of audit concerns
542 Requirements as to website availability
543 Website publication: company’s supplementary duties
544 Website publication: offences
545 Meaning of “quoted company”
CHAPTER 6

AUDITORS’ LIABILITY

Voidness of provisions protecting auditors from liability
546 Voidness of provisions protecting auditors from liability

Indemnity for costs of defending proceedings
547 Indemnity for costs of successfully defending proceedings

Liability limitation agreements
548 Liability limitation agreements
549 Terms of liability limitation agreement
550 Authorisation of agreement by members of the company
551 Effect of liability limitation agreement
552 Disclosure of agreement by company

CHAPTER 7

SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISIONS

553 Minor definitions

PART 18

A COMPANY’S SHARE CAPITAL

CHAPTER 1

SHARES AND SHARE CAPITAL OF A COMPANY

Shares

554 Shares
555 Nature of shares
556 Nominal value of shares
557 Numbering of shares
558 Transferability of shares
559 Companies having a share capital
560 Issued and allotted share capital

Share capital

561 Called-up share capital
562 Equity share capital
CHAPTER 2

ALLOTMENT OF SHARES: GENERAL PROVISIONS

Power of directors to allot shares

563 Exercise by directors of power to allot shares etc
564 Power of directors to allot shares etc: private company with only one class of shares
565 Power of directors to allot shares etc: authorisation by company

Prohibition of commissions, discounts and allowances

566 General prohibition of commissions, discounts and allowances
567 Permitted commission

Registration of allotment

568 Registration of allotment

Return of allotment

569 Return of allotment by limited company
570 Return of allotment by unlimited company allotting new class of shares
571 Offence of failure to make return

Supplementary provisions

572 When shares are allotted
573 Provisions about allotment not applicable to shares taken on formation

CHAPTER 3

ALLOTMENT OF EQUITY SECURITIES: EXISTING SHAREHOLDERS’ RIGHT OF PRE-EMPTION

Introductory

574 Meaning of “equity securities” and related expressions

Existing shareholders’ right of pre-emption

575 Existing shareholders’ right of pre-emption
576 Communication of pre-emption offers to shareholders
577 Liability of company and officers in case of contravention

Exceptions to right of pre-emption

578 Exception to pre-emption right: bonus shares
579 Exception to pre-emption right: issue for non-cash consideration
580 Exception to pre-emption right: securities held under employees’ share scheme
Exclusion of right of pre-emption

581 Exclusion of requirements by private companies
582 Exclusion of pre-emption right: articles conferring corresponding right

Disapplication of pre-emption rights

583 Disapplication of pre-emption rights: private company with only one class of shares
584 Disapplication of pre-emption rights: directors acting under general authorisation
585 Disapplication of pre-emption rights by special resolution
586 Liability for false statement in directors’ statement
587 Disapplication of pre-emption rights: sale of treasury shares

Supplementary

588 References to holder of shares in relation to offer
589 Saving for other restrictions on offer or allotment
590 Saving for certain older pre-emption requirements
591 Provisions about pre-emption not applicable to shares taken on formation

CHAPTER 4

PUBLIC COMPANIES: ALLOTMENT WHERE ISSUE NOT FULLY SUBSCRIBED

592 Public companies: allotment where issue not fully subscribed
593 Public companies: effect of irregular allotment where issue not fully subscribed

CHAPTER 5

PAYMENT FOR SHARES

General rules

594 Shares not to be allotted at a discount
595 Provision for different amounts to be paid on shares
596 General rule as to means of payment
597 Meaning of payment in cash

Additional rules for public companies

598 Public companies: shares taken by subscribers of memorandum
599 Public companies: must not accept undertaking to do work or perform services
600 Public companies: shares must be at least one-quarter paid up
601 Public companies: payment by long-term undertaking

Supplementary provisions

602 Liability of subsequent holders of shares
603 Power of court to grant relief
604 Penalty for contravention of this Chapter
605 Enforceability of undertakings to do work etc
606 The appropriate rate of interest

CHAPTER 6

PUBLIC COMPANIES: INDEPENDENT VALUATION OF NON-CASH CONSIDERATION

Non-cash consideration for shares

607 Public company: valuation of non-cash consideration for shares
608 Exception to valuation requirement: arrangement with another company
609 Exception to valuation requirement: merger
610 Non-cash consideration for shares: requirements as to valuation and report
611 Copy of report to be delivered to registrar

Transfer of non-cash asset in initial period

612 Public company: agreement for transfer of non-cash asset in initial period
613 Agreement for transfer of non-cash asset: requirement of independent valuation
614 Agreement for transfer of non-cash asset: requirements as to valuation and report
615 Agreement for transfer of non-cash asset: requirement of approval by members
616 Copy of resolution to be delivered to registrar
617 Adaptation of provisions in relation to company re-registering as public
618 Agreement for transfer of non-cash asset: effect of contravention

Supplementary provisions

619 Liability of subsequent holders of shares
620 Power of court to grant relief
621 Penalty for contravention of this Chapter
622 Enforceability of undertakings to do work etc
623 The appropriate rate of interest

CHAPTER 7

SHARE PREMIUMS

The share premium account

624 Application of share premiums

Relief from requirements as to share premiums

625 Group reconstruction relief
626 Merger relief
627 Merger relief: meaning of 90% equity holding
628 Power to make further provision by regulations
629 Relief may be reflected in company’s balance sheet

Supplementary provisions

630 Interpretation of this Chapter
CHAPTER 8
ALTERATION OF SHARE CAPITAL

How share capital may be altered
631 Alteration of share capital of limited company

Subdivision or consolidation of shares
632 Sub-division or consolidation of shares
633 Notice to registrar of sub-division or consolidation

Reconversion of stock into shares
634 Re-conversion of stock into shares
635 Notice to registrar of reconversion of stock into shares

Redenomination of share capital
636 Redenomination of share capital
637 Calculation of new nominal values
638 Effect of redenomination
639 Notice to registrar of redenomination
640 Reduction of capital in connection with redenomination
641 Notice to registrar of reduction of capital in connection with redenomination
642 Redenomination reserve

CHAPTER 9
CLASSES OF SHARE AND CLASS RIGHTS

Introductory
643 Classes of shares

Variation of class rights
644 Variation of class rights: companies having a share capital
645 Variation of class rights: companies without a share capital
646 Variation of class rights: saving for court’s powers under other provisions
647 Right to object to variation: companies having a share capital
648 Right to object to variation: companies without a share capital
649 Copy of court order to be forwarded to the registrar

Matters to be notified to the registrar
650 Notice of name or other designation of class of shares
651 Notice of particulars of variation of rights attached to shares
652 Notice of new class of members
653 Notice of name or other designation of class of members
654 Notice of particulars of variation of class rights
CHAPTER 10

REDUCTION OF SHARE CAPITAL

Introductory

655 Circumstances in which a company may reduce its share capital

Private companies: reduction of capital supported by solvency statement

656 Reduction of capital supported by solvency statement
657 Solvency statement
658 Registration of resolution and supporting documents

Reduction of capital confirmed by the court

659 Application to court for order of confirmation
660 Creditors entitled to object to reduction
661 Offences in connection with list of creditors
662 Court order confirming reduction
663 Registration of order and statement of capital

Public company reducing capital below authorised minimum

664 Public company reducing capital below authorised minimum
665 Expedited procedure for re-registration as a private company

Effect of reduction of capital

666 Liability of members following reduction of capital
667 Liability to creditor in case of omission from list of creditors

CHAPTER 11

MISCELLANEOUS AND SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISIONS

668 Shares no bar to damages against company
669 Public companies: duty of directors to call meeting on serious loss of capital
670 General power to make further provision by regulations

PART 19

ACQUISITION BY LIMITED COMPANY OF ITS OWN SHARES

CHAPTER 1

GENERAL PROVISIONS

Introductory

671 General rule against limited company acquiring its own shares
672 Exceptions to general rule
Shares held by company’s nominee
673 Treatment of shares held by nominee
674 Liability of others where nominee fails to make payment in respect of shares

Shares held by or for public company
675 Duty to cancel shares in public company held by or for the company
676 Notice of cancellation of shares
677 Re-registration as private company in consequence of cancellation
678 Issue of certificate of incorporation on re-registration
679 Effect of failure to re-register
680 Offence in case of failure to cancel shares or re-register
681 Application of provisions to company re-registering as public company
682 Accounting treatment of shares held by public company or nominee

Charges of public company on own shares
683 Public companies: general rule against lien or charge on own shares

Supplementary provisions
684 Interests to be disregarded in determining whether company has beneficial interest
685 Residual interest under pension scheme or employees’ share scheme
686 Employer’s charges and other rights of recovery
687 Rights as personal representative or trustee
688 Meaning of “pension scheme”
689 Application of provisions to directors

CHAPTER 2
FINANCIAL ASSISTANCE FOR PURCHASE OF OWN SHARES

Introductory
690 Meaning of “financial assistance”

Circumstances in which financial assistance prohibited
691 Assistance for acquisition of shares in public company
692 Assistance by public company for acquisition of shares in its private holding company
693 Prohibited financial assistance an offence

Exceptions from prohibition
694 Unconditional exceptions
695 Conditional exceptions

Supplementary
696 Definitions for this Chapter
CHAPTER 3

REDEEMABLE SHARES

697 Power of limited company to issue redeemable shares
698 Terms and manner of redemption
699 Payment for redeemable shares
700 Financing of redemption
701 Redeemed shares treated as cancelled
702 Notice to registrar of redemption

CHAPTER 4

PURCHASE OF OWN SHARES

General provisions

703 Power of limited company to purchase own shares
704 Payment for purchase of own shares
705 Financing of purchase of own shares

Authority for purchase of own shares

706 Authority for purchase of own shares

Authority for off-market purchase

707 Authority for off-market purchase
708 Resolution authorising off-market purchase: exercise of voting rights
709 Resolution authorising off-market purchase: disclosure of details of contract
710 Variation of contract for off-market purchase
711 Resolution authorising variation: exercise of voting rights
712 Resolution authorising variation: disclosure of details of variation
713 Release of company’s rights under contract for off-market purchase

Authority for market purchase

714 Authority for market purchase

Supplementary provisions

715 Copy of contract or memorandum to be available for inspection
716 Enforcement of right to inspect copy or memorandum
717 No assignment of company’s right to purchase own shares
718 Payments apart from purchase price to be made out of distributable profits
719 Treatment of shares purchased
720 Return to registrar of purchase of own shares
721 Notice to registrar of cancellation of shares
CHAPTER 5

REDEMPTION OR PURCHASE BY PRIVATE COMPANY OUT OF CAPITAL

Introductory

722 Power of private limited company to redeem or purchase own shares out of capital

The permissible capital payment

723 The permissible capital payment
724 Available profits
725 Determination of available profits

Requirements for payment out of capital

726 Requirements for payment out of capital
727 Directors’ statement and auditor’s report
728 Directors’ statement: offence if no reasonable grounds for opinion
729 Payment to be approved by special resolution
730 Resolution authorising payment: exercise of voting rights
731 Resolution authorising payment: disclosure of directors’ statement and auditors’ report
732 Public notice of proposed payment
733 Directors’ statement and auditor’s report to be available for inspection

Objection to payment by members or creditors

734 Application to court to cancel resolution
735 Notice to registrar of court application or order

Supplementary provisions

736 When payment out of capital to be made

CHAPTER 6

TREASURY SHARES

737 Treasury shares
738 Treasury shares: maximum holdings
739 Treasury shares: exercise of rights
740 Treasury shares: disposal
741 Treasury shares: notice of disposal
742 Treasury shares: cancellation
743 Treasury shares: notice of cancellation
744 Treasury shares: treatment of proceeds of sale
745 Treasury shares: offences
### CHAPTER 7

**SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISIONS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Provision</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>746</td>
<td>The capital redemption reserve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>747</td>
<td>Accounting consequences of payment out of capital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>748</td>
<td>Effect of company’s failure to redeem or purchase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>749</td>
<td>Meaning of “distributable profits”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>750</td>
<td>General power to make further provision by regulations</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PART 20

**DEBENTURES**

**General provisions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Provision</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>751</td>
<td>Meaning of “debenture”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>752</td>
<td>Perpetual debentures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>753</td>
<td>Enforcement of contract to subscribe for debentures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>754</td>
<td>Registration of allotment of debentures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>755</td>
<td>Debentures to bearer (Scotland)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Register of debenture holders**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Provision</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>756</td>
<td>Register of debenture holders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>757</td>
<td>Register of debenture holders: right to inspect and require copy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>758</td>
<td>Register of debenture holders: response to request for inspection or copy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>759</td>
<td>Register of debenture holders: refusal of inspection or default in providing copy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>760</td>
<td>Register of debenture holders: offences in connection with request for or disclosure of information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>761</td>
<td>Time limit for claims arising from entry in register</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Supplementary provisions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Provision</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>762</td>
<td>Right of debenture holder to copy of deed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>763</td>
<td>Liability of trustees of debentures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>764</td>
<td>Liability of trustees of debentures: saving for certain older provisions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>765</td>
<td>Power to re-issue redeemed debentures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>766</td>
<td>Deposit of debentures to secure advances</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>767</td>
<td>Priorities where debentures secured by floating charge</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### PART 21

**PRIVATE AND PUBLIC COMPANIES**

**CHAPTER 1**

**PROHIBITION OF PUBLIC OFFERS BY PRIVATE COMPANIES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Provision</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>768</td>
<td>Prohibition of public offers by private company</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>769</td>
<td>Meaning of “offer to the public”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>770</td>
<td>Enforcement of prohibition: order restraining proposed contravention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>771</td>
<td>Enforcement of prohibition: orders available to the court after contravention</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
772 Enforcement of prohibition: remedial order
773 Validity of allotment etc not affected

CHAPTER 2
MINIMUM SHARE CAPITAL REQUIREMENT FOR PUBLIC COMPANIES

774 Public company: requirement as to minimum share capital
775 Procedure for obtaining certificate
776 The authorised minimum
777 Consequences of doing business etc without a trading certificate

PART 22
CERTIFICATION AND TRANSFER OF SECURITIES

CHAPTER 1
CERTIFICATION AND TRANSFER OF SECURITIES: GENERAL

Share certificates

778 Share certificate to be evidence of title

Issue of certificates etc on allotment

779 Duty of company as to issue of certificates etc on allotment

Transfer of securities

780 Registration of transfer
781 Procedure on transfer being lodged
782 Transfer of shares on application of transferor
783 Execution of share transfer by personal representative
784 Evidence of grant of probate etc
785 Certification of instrument of transfer

Issue of certificates etc on transfer

786 Duty of company as to issue of certificates etc on transfer
787 Issue of certificates etc: cases within the Stock Transfer Act 1982

Issue of certificates etc on allotment or transfer to financial institution

788 Issue of certificates etc: allotment or transfer to financial institution

Share warrants

789 Issue and effect of share warrant to bearer
790 Duty of company as to issue of certificates on surrender of share warrant
791 Offences in connection with share warrants (Scotland)
Supplementary provisions

792 Issue of certificates etc: court order to make good default

CHAPTER 2

EVIDENCING AND TRANSFER OF TITLE TO SECURITIES WITHOUT WRITTEN INSTRUMENT

Introductory

793 Scope of this Chapter
794 Power to make regulations

Powers exercisable

795 Provision enabling procedures for evidencing and transferring title
796 Provision requiring arrangements to be adopted
797 Provision requiring arrangements to be adopted: order-making powers

Supplementary

798 Provision that may be included in regulations
799 Duty to consult

PART 23

INFORMATION ABOUT INTERESTS IN A COMPANY’S SHARES

Introductory

800 Companies to which this Part applies
801 Shares to which this Part applies

Notice requiring information about interests in shares

802 Notice by company requiring information about interests in its shares
803 Notice requiring information: order imposing restrictions on shares
804 Notice requiring information: offences
805 Notice requiring information: persons exempted from obligation to comply

Power of members to require company to act

806 Power of members to require company to act
807 Duty of company to comply with requirement
808 Report to members on outcome of investigation
809 Report to members: offences
810 Right to inspect and request copy of reports

Register of interests disclosed

811 Register of interests disclosed
812 Register to be kept available for inspection
813 Associated index
814 Rights to inspect and require copy of entries
815 Court supervision of purpose for which rights may be exercised
816 Register of interests disclosed: refusal of inspection or default in providing copy
817 Register of interests disclosed: offences in connection with request for or disclosure of information
818 Entries not to be removed from register
819 Removal of entries from register: old entries
820 Removal of entries from register: incorrect entry relating to third party
821 Adjustment of entry relating to share acquisition agreement
822 Duty of company ceasing to be public company

Meaning of interest in shares

823 Interest in shares: general
824 Interest in shares: right to subscribe for shares
825 Interest in shares: family interests
826 Interest in shares: corporate interests
827 Interest in shares: agreement to acquire interests in a particular company
828 Extent of obligation in case of share acquisition agreement

Other supplementary provisions

829 Information protected from wider disclosure
830 Reckoning of periods for fulfilling obligations
831 Power to make further provision by regulations

PART 24

DISTRIBUTIONS

CHAPTER 1

RESTRICTIONS ON WHEN DISTRIBUTIONS MAY BE MADE

Introductory

832 Meaning of “distribution”

General rules

833 Distributions to be made only out of profits available for the purpose
834 Net asset restriction on distributions by public companies

Distributions by investment companies

835 Distributions by investment companies out of accumulated revenue profits
836 Meaning of “investment company”
837 Investment company: condition as to holdings in other companies
838 Power to extend provisions relating to investment companies
CHAPTER 2
JUSTIFICATION OF DISTRIBUTION BY REFERENCE TO ACCOUNTS

Justification of distribution by reference to accounts

839 Justification of distribution by reference to relevant accounts

Requirements applicable in relation to relevant accounts

840 Requirements where last annual accounts used
841 Requirements where interim accounts used
842 Requirements where initial accounts used

Application of provisions to successive distributions etc

843 Successive distributions etc by reference to the same accounts

CHAPTER 3
SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISIONS

Accounting matters

844 Realised losses and profits and revaluation of fixed assets
845 Determination of profit or loss in respect of asset where records incomplete
846 Realised profits and losses of long term insurance business
847 Treatment of development costs

Distributions in kind

848 Distributions in kind: determination of amount
849 Distributions in kind: treatment of unrealised profits

Consequences of unlawful distribution

850 Consequences of unlawful distribution

Other matters

851 Saving for certain older provisions in articles
852 Restriction on application of unrealised profits
853 Treatment of certain older profits or losses
854 Application of rules of law restricting distributions
855 Saving for other restrictions on distributions
856 Minor definitions
857 General power to make further provision by regulations

PART 25
A COMPANY’S ANNUAL RETURN

858 Duty to deliver annual returns
859 Contents of annual return: general
PART 26

COMPANY CHARGES

CHAPTER 1

COMPANIES REGISTERED IN ENGLAND AND WALES OR IN NORTHERN IRELAND

Requirement to register company charges

864 Charges created by a company
865 Charges which have to be registered: supplementary
866 Charges existing on property acquired

Special rules about debentures

867 Charge in series of debentures
868 Additional registration requirement for commission etc. in relation to debentures
869 Endorsement of certificate on debentures

Charges in other jurisdictions

870 Charges created in, or over property in, jurisdictions outside the United Kingdom
871 Charges created in, or over property in, another United Kingdom jurisdiction

Orders charging land: Northern Ireland

872 Northern Ireland: registration of certain charges etc. affecting land

The register of charges

873 Register of charges to be kept by registrar
874 The period allowed for registration
875 Registration of enforcement of security
876 Entries of satisfaction and release
877 Rectification of register of charges

Avoidance of certain charges

878 Consequence of failure to register charges created by a company

Companies records and registers

879 Companies to keep copies of instruments creating charges
880 Company’s register of charges
881 Right to inspect instruments which create charges, etc.
CHAPTER 2

COMPANIES REGISTERED IN SCOTLAND

Charges requiring registration

882 Charges created by a company
883 Charges which have to be registered: supplementary
884 Duty to register charges existing on property acquired
885 Charge by way of ex facie absolute disposition, etc

Special rules about debentures

886 Charge in series of debentures
887 Additional registration requirement for commission etc. in relation to debentures

Charges on property outside the United Kingdom

888 Charges on property outside United Kingdom

The register of charges

889 Register of charges to be kept by registrar
890 The period allowed for registration
891 Entries of satisfaction and relief
892 Rectification of register of charges

Avoidance of certain charges

893 Charges void unless registered

Companies’ records and registers

894 Copies of instruments creating charges to be kept by company
895 Company’s register of charges
896 Right to inspect copies of instruments, and company’s register

CHAPTER 3

POWERS OF THE SECRETARY OF STATE

897 Power to make provision for effect of registration in special register
898 General power to make amendments to this Part

PART 27

ARRANGEMENTS AND RECONSTRUCTIONS

Scheme of this Part

899 Scheme of this Part
Court sanction for compromise or arrangement

900 Court sanction for compromise or arrangement
901 Meeting of creditors or members
902 Statement to be circulated or made available
903 Duty of directors and trustees to provide information
904 Court order sanctioning compromise or arrangement
905 Copy of court order to be annexed to copies of company’s constitution

Reconstructions and amalgamations

906 Powers of court to facilitate reconstruction or amalgamation
907 Copy of order to be delivered to the registrar

Mergers and divisions of public companies

908 Power to make provision for mergers and divisions of public companies

PART 28

TAKEOVERS ETC

CHAPTER 1

THE TAKEOVER PANEL

The Panel and its rules

909 The Panel
910 Rules
911 Further provisions about rules
912 Rulings
913 Directions

Information

914 Power to require documents and information
915 Restrictions on disclosure
916 Offence of disclosure in contravention of section 915

Co-operation

917 Panel’s duty of co-operation

Hearings and appeals

918 Hearings and appeals

Contravention of rules etc

919 Sanctions
920 Failure to comply with rules about bid documentation
921 Compensation
922 Enforcement by the court
923 No action for breach of statutory duty etc
Funding

924 Fees and charges
925 Levy
926 Recovery of fees, charges or levy

Miscellaneous and supplementary

927 Panel as party to proceedings
928 Exemption from liability in damages
929 Privilege against self-incrimination
930 Annual reports
931 Amendments to Financial Services and Markets Act 2000
932 Power to extend to Isle of Man and Channel Islands

CHAPTER 2

IMPEDEMENTS TO TAKEOVERS

Opting in and opting out

933 Opting in and opting out
934 Further provision about opting-in and opting-out resolutions

Consequences of opting in

935 Effect on contractual restrictions
936 Power of offeror to require general meeting to be called

Supplementary

937 Communication of decisions
938 Interpretation of Chapter
939 Transitory provision
940 Power to extend to Isle of Man and Channel Islands

CHAPTER 3

“SQUEEZE-OUT” AND “SELL-OUT”

Takeover offers

941 Meaning of “takeover offer”
942 Shares already held by the offeror etc
943 Cases where offer treated as being on same terms
944 Shares to which an offer relates
945 Effect of impossibility etc of communicating or accepting offer

“Squeeze-out”

946 Right of offeror to buy out minority shareholder
947 Further provision about notices given under section 946
948 Effect of notice under section 946
949 Further provision about consideration held on trust under section 948(9)
“Sell-out”

950 Right of minority shareholder to be bought out by offeror
951 Further provision about rights conferred by section 950
952 Effect of requirement under section 950

Supplementary

953 Applications to the court
954 Joint offers

Interpretation

955 Associates
956 Convertible securities
957 Debentures carrying voting rights
958 Interpretation

CHAPTER 4

AMENDMENTS TO PART 7 OF THE COMPANIES ACT 1985

959 Matters to be dealt with in directors’ report

PART 29

FRAUDULENT TRADING

960 Offence of fraudulent trading

PART 30

PROTECTION OF MEMBERS AGAINST UNFAIR PREJUDICE

Main provisions

961 Petition by company member
962 Petition by Secretary of State
963 Powers of the court under this Part

Supplementary provisions

964 Application of rule-making powers
965 Copy of order affecting company’s articles to be delivered to registrar
PART 31

DISSOLUTION AND RESTORATION TO THE REGISTER

CHAPTER 1

STRIKING OFF

Registrar’s power to strike off defunct company

966 Power to strike off company not carrying on business or in operation
967 Duty to act in case of company being wound up
968 Supplementary provisions as to service of letter or notice

Voluntary striking off

969 Striking off on application by company
970 Circumstances in which application not to be made: activities of company
971 Circumstances in which application not to be made: other proceedings not concluded
972 Copy of application to be given to members, employees, etc
973 Copy of application to be given to new members, employees, etc
974 Copy of application: provisions as to service of documents
975 Circumstances in which application to be withdrawn
976 Withdrawal of application
977 Meaning of “creditor”

CHAPTER 2

PROPERTY OF DISSOLVED COMPANY

Property vesting as bona vacantia

978 Property of dissolved company to be bona vacantia
979 Crown disclaimer of property vesting as bona vacantia
980 Effect of Crown disclaimer

Effect of Crown disclaimer: England and Wales and Northern Ireland

981 General effect of disclaimer
982 Disclaimer of leaseholds
983 Power of court to make vesting order
984 Protection of persons holding under a lease
985 Land subject to rentcharge

Effect of Crown disclaimer: Scotland

986 General effect of disclaimer
987 Power of court to make vesting order
988 Protection of persons holding under a lease

Supplementary provisions

989 Liability for rentcharge on company’s land after dissolution
CHAPTER 3

RESTORATION TO THE REGISTER

**Administrative restoration to the register**

- 990 Application for administrative restoration to the register
- 991 Requirements for administrative restoration
- 992 Application to be accompanied by statement of compliance
- 993 Registrar’s decision on application for administrative restoration
- 994 Effect of administrative restoration

**Restoration to the register by the court**

- 995 Application to court for restoration to the register
- 996 When application to the court may be made
- 997 Decision on application for restoration by the court
- 998 Effect of court order for restoration to the register

**Supplementary provisions**

- 999 Company’s name on restoration
- 1000 Effect of restoration to the register where property has vested as bona vacantia

PART 32

COMPANY INVESTIGATIONS: AMENDMENTS

- 1001 Powers of Secretary of State to give directions to inspectors
- 1002 Resignation, removal and replacement of inspectors
- 1003 Power to obtain information from former inspectors etc
- 1004 Power to require production of documents
- 1005 Disqualification orders: consequential amendments

PART 33

UK COMPANIES NOT FORMED UNDER THE COMPANIES ACTS

CHAPTER 1

COMPANIES NOT FORMED UNDER THE COMPANIES ACTS BUT AUTHORISED TO REGISTER

- 1006 Companies authorised to register under the Companies Acts
- 1007 Definition of “joint stock company”
- 1008 Power to make provision by regulations
- 1009 Application of provisions to existing companies

CHAPTER 2

UNREGISTERED COMPANIES

- 1010 Unregistered companies
PART 34

OVERSEAS COMPANIES

Introductory

1011 Overseas companies

Registration of particulars

1012 Duty to register particulars
1013 Registered name of overseas company
1014 Registration under alternative name

Other requirements

1015 Accounts and reports: general
1016 Accounts and reports: credit or financial institutions
1017 Trading disclosures
1018 Other returns etc
1019 UK branch registers of overseas companies

Supplementary

1020 Offences
1021 Disclosure of individual’s residential address: protection from disclosure
1022 Requirement to identify persons authorised to accept service of documents
1023 Registrar to whom returns, notices etc to be delivered
1024 Duty to give notice of ceasing to have registrable presence
1025 Application of provisions in case of relocation of branch

PART 35

THE REGISTRAR OF COMPANIES

The registrar

1026 The registrar
1027 The registrar’s functions
1028 The registrar’s official seal
1029 Fees payable to registrar

Certificates of incorporation

1030 Public notice of issue of certificate of incorporation
1031 Right to certificate of incorporation

Registered numbers

1032 Company’s registered numbers
1033 Registered numbers of branches of overseas company
Delivery of documents to the registrar

1034 Registrar’s requirements
1035 Power to require delivery by electronic means
1036 Agreement for delivery by electronic means
1037 Document not delivered until received

Defective delivery

1038 Defective delivery
1039 Informal correction of document
1040 Voluntary replacement of document previously delivered
1041 Exclusion of unnecessary material
1042 Registrar’s notice to remedy defective delivery

Public notice of receipt of certain documents

1043 Public notice of receipt of certain documents
1044 Documents subject to Directive disclosure requirements
1045 Effect of failure to give public notice

The register

1046 The register
1047 Annotation of the register
1048 Allocation of unique identifiers
1049 Preservation of original documents
1050 Records relating to companies that have been dissolved etc

Inspection etc of the register

1051 Inspection of the register
1052 Right to copy of material on the register
1053 Material not available for public inspection
1054 Application to registrar to make address unavailable for public inspection
1055 Form of application for inspection or copy
1056 Form and manner in which copies to be provided
1057 Certification of copies as accurate
1058 Issue of process for production of records kept by the registrar

Correction or removal of material on the register

1059 Registrar’s notice to resolve inconsistency on the register
1060 Administrative removal of material from the register
1061 Rectification of register on application to registrar
1062 Rectification of the register under court order
1063 Powers of court on ordering removal of material from the register
1064 Public notice of removal of certain material from the register

The registrar’s index of company names

1065 The registrar’s index of company names
1066 Right to inspect index
1067 Power to amend enactments relating to bodies other than companies
Language requirements: translation

1068 Application of language requirements
1069 Documents to be drawn up and delivered in English
1070 Documents relating to Welsh companies
1071 Documents that may be drawn up and delivered in other languages
1072 Voluntary filing of translations
1073 Certified translations

Language requirements: transliteration

1074 Transliteration of names and addresses: permitted characters
1075 Transliteration of names and addresses: voluntary transliteration into Roman characters
1076 Transliteration of names and addresses: certification

Supplementary provisions

1077 General false statement offence
1078 Enforcement of company’s filing obligations
1079 Application of provisions about documents and delivery
1080 Provisions requiring copies of court orders to be delivered to the registrar
1081 Supplementary provisions relating to electronic communications
1082 Alternative to publication in the Gazette
1083 Registrar’s rules
1084 Payments into the Consolidated Fund
1085 Contracting out of registrar’s functions
1086 Application of Part to overseas companies

PART 36

OFFENCES UNDER THE COMPANIES ACTS

Liability of officer in default

1087 Liability of officer in default
1088 Liability of company as officer in default
1089 Application to bodies other than companies

Offences under the Companies Act 1985

1090 Amendments of the Companies Act 1985

General provisions

1091 Meaning of “daily default fine”
1092 Consents required for certain prosecutions
1093 Summary proceedings: venue
1094 Summary proceedings: time limit for proceedings
1095 Legal professional privilege
1096 Proceedings against unincorporated bodies
1097 Imprisonment on summary conviction in England and Wales: transitory provision
Production and inspection of documents

1098 Production and inspection of documents where offence suspected

Supplementary

1099 Transitional provision

PART 37

COMPANIES: SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISIONS

Company records

1100 Meaning of “company records”
1101 Form of company records
1102 Regulations about inspection of records and provision of copies
1103 Duty to take precautions against falsification

Service addresses

1104 Service of documents on company
1105 Service of documents on directors, secretaries and others
1106 Service addresses
1107 Requirement to give service address

Sending or supplying documents or information

1108 The company communications provisions
1109 Sending or supplying documents or information
1110 Construction of provisions about documents or information sent or supplied
1111 Right to hard copy version
1112 Requirement of authentication
1113 Deemed delivery of documents and information
1114 Interpretation of company communications provisions

Requirements as to independent valuation

1115 Application of valuation requirements
1116 Valuation by qualified independent person
1117 The independence requirement
1118 Meaning of “associate”
1119 Valuer entitled to full disclosure

Notice of appointment of certain officers

1120 Duty to notify registrar of certain appointments etc
1121 Offence of failure to give notice

Courts and legal proceedings

1122 Meaning of “the court”
1123 Power of court to grant relief in certain cases
PART 38
COMPANIES: INTERPRETATION

Meaning of "subsidiary" and related expressions
1124 Meaning of “subsidiary” etc
1125 Meaning of “subsidiary” etc: power to amend

Meaning of "undertaking" and related expressions
1126 Meaning of “undertaking” and related expressions
1127 Parent and subsidiary undertakings

Other definitions
1128 Meaning of “banking company” and “banking group”
1129 Meaning of “insurance company” and related expressions
1130 “Employees’ share scheme”
1131 Meaning of “prescribed”
1132 Hard copy and electronic form and related expressions
1133 Classes of shares
1134 Dormant companies
1135 Meaning of “EEA State” and related expressions
1136 The former Companies Acts

General
1137 References to requirements of this Act
1138 Minor definitions: general
1139 Index of defined expressions

PART 39
COMPANIES: MINOR AMENDMENTS

1140 Power of Secretary of State to bring civil proceedings on company’s behalf
1141 Repeal of certain provisions about company directors
1142 Repeal of requirement that certain companies publish periodical statement
1143 Repeal of requirement that Secretary of State prepare annual report
1144 Repeal of certain provisions about company charges
1145 Access to constitutional documents of RTE and RTM companies

PART 40
COMPANY DIRECTORS: FOREIGN DISQUALIFICATION ETC

Introductory
1146 Persons subject to foreign restrictions
1147 Meaning of “the court” and “UK company”
Power to disqualify

1148  Disqualification of persons subject to foreign restrictions
1149  Disqualification regulations: supplementary
1150  Offence of breach of disqualification

Power to make persons liable for company’s debts

1151  Personal liability for debts of company

Power to require statements to be sent to the registrar of companies

1152  Statements from persons subject to foreign restrictions
1153  Statements from persons disqualified
1154  Statements: whether to be made public
1155  Offences

PART 41

BUSINESS NAMES

CHAPTER 1

RESTRICTED OR PROHIBITED NAMES

Introductory

1156  Application of this Chapter

Sensitive words or expressions

1157  Name suggesting connection with government or public authority
1158  Other sensitive words or expressions
1159  Requirement to seek comments of government department or other relevant body
1160  Withdrawal of Secretary of State’s approval

Misleading names

1161  Name containing inappropriate indication of company type or legal form
1162  Name giving misleading indication of activities

Supplementary

1163  Savings for existing lawful business names

CHAPTER 2

DISCLOSURE REQUIRED IN CASE OF INDIVIDUAL OR PARTNERSHIP

Introductory

1164  Application of this Chapter
1165  Information required to be disclosed
Disclosure requirements

1166 Disclosure required: business documents etc
1167 Exemption for large partnerships if certain conditions met
1168 Disclosure required: business premises

Consequences of failure to make required disclosure

1169 Criminal consequences of failure to make required disclosure
1170 Civil consequences of failure to make required disclosure

CHAPTER 3

SUPPLEMENTARY

1171 Application of general provisions about offences
1172 Interpretation

PART 42

STATUTORY AUDITORS

CHAPTER 1

INTRODUCTORY

1173 Main purposes of Part
1174 Meaning of “statutory auditor” etc
1175 Eligibility for appointment as a statutory auditor: overview

CHAPTER 2

INDIVIDUALS AND FIRMS

Eligibility for appointment

1176 Individuals and firms: eligibility for appointment as a statutory auditor
1177 Effect of ineligibility

Independence requirement

1178 Independence requirement
1179 Effect of lack of independence

Effect of appointment of a partnership

1180 Effect of appointment of a partnership

Supervisory bodies

1181 Supervisory bodies
1182 Exemption from liability for damages
Professional qualifications

1183 Appropriate qualifications
1184 Qualifying bodies and recognised professional qualifications
1185 Approval of overseas qualifications
1186 Eligibility of individuals retaining only 1967 Act authorisation

Information

1187 Matters to be notified to the Secretary of State
1188 The Secretary of State’s power to call for information

Enforcement

1189 Compliance orders

CHAPTER 3

AUDITORS GENERAL

Eligibility for appointment

1190 Auditors General: eligibility for appointment as a statutory auditor

Conduct of audits

1191 Individuals responsible for audit work on behalf of Auditors General

The Independent Supervisor

1192 Appointment of the Independent Supervisor

Supervision of Auditors General

1193 Supervision of Auditors General by the Independent Supervisor
1194 Duties of Auditors General in relation to supervision arrangements

Reporting requirement

1195 Reports by the Independent Supervisor

Information

1196 Matters to be notified to the Independent Supervisor
1197 The Independent Supervisor’s power to call for information

Enforcement

1198 Suspension notices
1199 Effect of suspension notices
1200 Compliance orders

Proceedings

1201 Proceedings involving the Independent Supervisor
Grants

1202 Grants to the Independent Supervisor

CHAPTER 4

THE REGISTER OF AUDITORS ETC

1203 The register of auditors
1204 Information to be made available to public

CHAPTER 5

REGISTERED THIRD COUNTRY AUDITORS

Introductory

1205 Meaning of “third country auditor”, “registered third country auditor” etc

Duties

1206 Duties of registered third country auditors

Information

1207 Matters to be notified to the Secretary of State
1208 The Secretary of State’s power to call for information

Enforcement

1209 Compliance orders
1210 Removal of third country auditors from the register of auditors
1211 Grants to bodies concerned with arrangements under Schedule 12

CHAPTER 6

SUPPLEMENTARY AND GENERAL

Power to require second company audit

1212 Secretary of State’s power to require second audit of a company
1213 Supplementary provision about second audits

False and misleading statements

1214 Misleading, false and deceptive statements

Fees

1215 Fees

Delegation of Secretary of State’s functions

1216 Delegation of the Secretary of State’s functions
1217 Delegation of functions to an existing body
1218 Directions to comply with international obligations

1219 Offences by bodies corporate, partnerships and unincorporated associations
1220 Time limits for prosecution of offences
1221 Jurisdiction and procedure in respect of offences

1222 Service of notices
1223 Documents in electronic form

1224 Meaning of “associate”
1225 Minor definitions
1226 Index of defined expressions

1227 Power to make provision in consequence of changes affecting accountancy bodies
1228 Consequential amendments

PART 43
TRANSPARENCY OBLIGATIONS AND RELATED MATTERS

1229 The transparency obligations directive

1230 Transparency rules
1231 Competent authority’s power to call for information
1232 Powers exercisable in case of infringement of transparency obligation

1233 Corporate governance rules
1234 Liability for false or misleading statements in certain publications
1235 Exercise of powers where UK is host member state
1236 Transparency obligations and related matters: minor and consequential amendments
1237 Corporate governance regulations
PART 44

MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

Regulation of actuaries etc

1238 Grants to bodies concerned with actuarial standards etc
1239 Levy to pay expenses of bodies concerned with actuarial standards etc
1240 Application of provisions to Scotland and Northern Ireland

Information as to exercise of voting rights by institutional investors

1241 Power to require information about exercise of voting rights
1242 Institutions to which information provisions apply
1243 Shares to which information provisions apply
1244 Obligations with respect to provision of information

Disclosure of information under the Enterprise Act 2002

1245 Disclosure of information under the Enterprise Act 2002

Expenses of winding up

1246 Payment of expenses of winding up

Commonhold associations

1247 Amendment of memorandum or articles of commonhold association

PART 45

NORTHERN IRELAND

1248 Extension of Companies Acts to Northern Ireland
1249 Extension of GB enactments relating to SEs
1250 Extension of GB enactments relating to certain other forms of business organisation
1251 Extension of enactments relating to business names

PART 46

GENERAL SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISIONS

Regulations and orders

1252 Regulations and orders: statutory instrument
1253 Regulations and orders: negative resolution procedure
1254 Regulations and orders: affirmative resolution procedure
1255 Regulations and orders: approval after being made
1256 Regulations and orders: supplementary

Meaning of "enactment"

1257 Meaning of “enactment"
Consequential and transitional provisions

1258 Power to make consequential amendments etc
1259 Repeals
1260 Power to make transitional provision and savings
1261 Continuity of the law

PART 47

FINAL PROVISIONS

1262 Short title
1263 Extent
1264 Commencement

Schedule 1 — Connected persons: references to an interest in shares or debentures
Schedule 2 — Specified persons, descriptions of disclosures etc for the purposes of section 915
  Part 1 — Specified persons
  Part 2 — Specified descriptions of disclosures
  Part 3 — Overseas regulatory bodies
Schedule 3 — Amendments of remaining provisions of the Companies Act 1985 relating to offences
Schedule 4 — Documents and information sent or supplied to a company
  Part 1 — Introduction
  Part 2 — Communications in hard copy form
  Part 3 — Communications in electronic form
  Part 4 — Other agreed forms of communication
Schedule 5 — Communications by a company other than a traded company
  Part 1 — Introduction
  Part 2 — Communications in hard copy form
  Part 3 — Communications in electronic form
  Part 4 — Communications by means of a website
  Part 5 — Other agreed forms of communication
  Part 6 — Supplementary provisions
Schedule 6 — Communications by a traded company
  Part 1 — Introduction
  Part 2 — Communications in hard copy form
  Part 3 — Communications in electronic form
  Part 4 — Communications by means of a website
  Part 5 — Other agreed forms of communication
  Part 6 — Supplementary provisions
Schedule 7 — Meaning of “subsidiary” etc: supplementary provisions
Schedule 8 — Parent and subsidiary undertakings: supplementary provisions
Schedule 9 — Index of defined expressions
Schedule 10 — Recognised supervisory bodies
  Part 1 — Grant and revocation of recognition of a supervisory body
  Part 2 — Requirements for recognition of a supervisory body
Part 3 – Arrangements in which recognised supervisory bodies are required to participate
Schedule 11 – Recognised professional qualifications
  Part 1 – Grant and revocation of recognition of a professional qualification
  Part 2 – Requirements for recognition of a professional qualification
Schedule 12 – Arrangements in which registered third country auditors are required to participate
Schedule 13 – Supplementary provisions with respect to delegation order
Schedule 14 – Statutory auditors: consequential amendments
Schedule 15 – Transparency obligations and related matters: minor and consequential amendments
  Part 1 – Amendments of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000
  Part 2 – Amendments of the Companies (Audit, Investigations and Community Enterprise) Act 2004
Schedule 16 – Repeals
PART 32

COMPANY INVESTIGATIONS: AMENDMENTS

1001 Powers of Secretary of State to give directions to inspectors

(1) In Part 14 of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6) (investigation of companies and their affairs), after section 446 insert—

“Powers of Secretary of State to give directions to inspectors

446A General powers to give directions

(1) In exercising his functions an inspector shall comply with any direction given to him by the Secretary of State under this section.

(2) The Secretary of State may give an inspector appointed under section 431, 432(2) or 442(1) a direction—
   (a) as to the subject matter of his investigation (whether by reference to a specified area of a company’s operation, a specified transaction, a period of time or otherwise), or
   (b) which requires the inspector to take or not to take a specified step in his investigation.

(3) The Secretary of State may give an inspector appointed under any provision of this Part a direction requiring him to secure that a specified report under section 437—
   (a) includes the inspector’s views on a specified matter,
   (b) does not include any reference to a specified matter,
   (c) is made in a specified form or manner, or
   (d) is made by a specified date.

(4) A direction under this section—
   (a) may be given on an inspector’s appointment,
   (b) may vary or revoke a direction previously given, and
   (c) may be given at the request of an inspector.

(5) In this section—
   (a) a reference to an inspector’s investigation includes any investigation he undertakes, or could undertake, under section 433(1) (power to investigate affairs of holding company or subsidiary);
   (b) “specified” means specified in a direction under this section.

446B Direction to terminate investigation

(1) The Secretary of State may direct an inspector to take no further steps in his investigation.

(2) The Secretary of State may give a direction under this section to an inspector appointed under section 432(1) or 442(3) only on the grounds that it appears to him that—
   (a) matters have come to light in the course of the inspector’s investigation which suggest that a criminal offence has been committed, and
(b) those matters have been referred to the appropriate prosecuting authority.

(3) Where the Secretary of State gives a direction under this section, any direction already given to the inspector under section 437(1) to produce an interim report, and any direction given to him under section 446A(3) in relation to such a report, shall cease to have effect.

(4) Where the Secretary of State gives a direction under this section, the inspector shall not make a final report to the Secretary of State unless—

(a) the direction was made on the grounds mentioned in subsection (2) and the Secretary of State directs the inspector to make a final report to him, or

(b) the inspector was appointed under section 432(1) (appointment in pursuance of order of the court).

(5) An inspector shall comply with any direction given to him under this section.

(6) In this section, a reference to an inspector’s investigation includes any investigation he undertakes, or could undertake, under section 433(1) (power to investigate affairs of holding company or subsidiary).

(2) In section 431 of that Act (inspectors’ powers during investigation) in subsection (1) for “report on them in such manner as he may direct” substitute “report the result of their investigations to him”.

(3) In section 432 of that Act (other company investigations) in subsection (1) for “report on them in such manner as he directs” substitute “report the result of their investigations to him”.

(4) In section 437 of that Act (inspectors’ reports)—

(a) in subsection (1) omit the second sentence, and

(b) subsections (1B) and (1C) shall cease to have effect.

(5) In section 442 of that Act (power to investigate company ownership), omit subsection (2).

1002 Resignation, removal and replacement of inspectors

After section 446B of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6) (inserted by section 1001 above) insert—

“Resignation, removal and replacement of inspectors

446C Resignation and revocation of appointment

(1) An inspector may resign by notice in writing to the Secretary of State.

(2) The Secretary of State may revoke the appointment of an inspector by notice in writing to the inspector.

446D Appointment of replacement inspectors

(1) Where—

(a) an inspector resigns,

(b) an inspector’s appointment is revoked, or

(c) an inspector dies,
the Secretary of State may appoint one or more competent inspectors to continue the investigation.

(2) An appointment under subsection (1) shall be treated for the purposes of this Part (apart from this section) as an appointment under the provision of this Part under which the former inspector was appointed.

(3) The Secretary of State must exercise his power under subsection (1) so as to secure that at least one inspector continues the investigation.

(4) Subsection (3) does not apply if—
   (a) the Secretary of State could give any replacement inspector a direction under section 446B (termination of investigation), and
   (b) such a direction would (under subsection (4) of that section) result in a final report not being made.

(5) In this section, references to an investigation include any investigation the former inspector conducted under section 433(1) (power to investigate affairs of holding company or subsidiary).”.

1003 Power to obtain information from former inspectors etc

(1) After section 446D of the Companies Act 1985 (inserted by section 1002 above) insert—

“Power to obtain information from former inspectors etc

446E Obtaining information from former inspectors etc

(1) This section applies to a person who was appointed as an inspector under this Part—
   (a) who has resigned, or
   (b) whose appointment has been revoked.

(2) This section also applies to an inspector to whom the Secretary of State has given a direction under section 446B (termination of investigation).

(3) The Secretary of State may direct a person to whom this section applies to produce documents obtained or generated by that person during the course of his investigation to—
   (a) the Secretary of State, or
   (b) an inspector appointed under this Part.

(4) The power under subsection (3) to require production of a document includes power, in the case of a document not in hard copy form, to require the production of a copy of the document—
   (a) in hard copy form, or
   (b) in a form from which a hard copy can be readily obtained.

(5) The Secretary of State may take copies of or extracts from a document produced in pursuance of this section.

(6) The Secretary of State may direct a person to whom this section applies to inform him of any matters that came to that person’s knowledge as a result of his investigation.
(7) A person shall comply with any direction given to him under this section.

(8) In this section—
   (a) references to the investigation of a former inspector or inspector include any investigation he conducted under section 433(1) (power to investigate affairs of holding company or subsidiary), and
   (b) “document” includes information recorded in any form.”.

(2) In section 451A of that Act (disclosure of information by Secretary of State or inspector), in subsection (1)(a) for “446” substitute “446E”.

(3) In section 452(1) of that Act (privileged information) for “446” substitute “446E”.

1004 Power to require production of documents

(1) In section 434 of the Companies Act 1985 (production of documents and evidence to inspectors), for subsection (6) substitute—
   “(6) In this section “document” includes information recorded in any form.
   (7) The power under this section to require production of a document includes power, in the case of a document not in hard copy form, to require the production of a copy of the document—
      (a) in hard copy form, or
      (b) in a form from which a hard copy can be readily obtained.
   (8) An inspector may take copies of or extracts from a document produced in pursuance of this section.”.

(2) In section 447 of the Companies Act 1985 (power of Secretary of State to require documents and information), for subsection (9) substitute—
   “(9) The power under this section to require production of a document includes power, in the case of a document not in hard copy form, to require the production of a copy of the document—
      (a) in hard copy form, or
      (b) in a form from which a hard copy can be readily obtained.”.

1005 Disqualification orders: consequential amendments

In section 8(1A)(b)(i) of the Company Directors Disqualification Act 1986 (c. 46) (disqualification after investigation of company: meaning of “investigative material”)—
   (a) after “section” insert “437, 446E,”, and
   (b) after “448” insert “, 451A”.
PART 33

UK COMPANIES NOT FORMED UNDER THE COMPANIES ACTS

CHAPTER 1

COMPANIES NOT FORMED UNDER THE COMPANIES ACTS BUT AUTHORISED TO REGISTER

1006 Companies authorised to register under the Companies Acts

1. This section applies to—
   (a) any company that was in existence on 2nd November 1862 (including any company registered under the Joint Stock Companies Acts), and
   (b) any company formed after that date (whether before or after the commencement of this Act)—
      (i) in pursuance of an Act of Parliament other than the Companies Acts or any of the former Companies Acts,
      (ii) in pursuance of letters patent, or
      (iii) that is otherwise duly constituted according to law.

2. Any such company may on making application register under this Act.

3. Subject to the following provisions, it may register as an unlimited company, as a company limited by shares or as a company limited by guarantee.

4. A company having the liability of its members limited by Act of Parliament or letters patent—
   (a) may not register under this section unless it is a joint stock company, and
   (b) may not register under this section as an unlimited company or a company limited by guarantee.

5. A company that is not a joint stock company may not register under this section as a company limited by shares.

6. The registration of a company under this section is not invalid by reason that it has taken place with a view to the company’s being wound up.

1007 Definition of “joint stock company”

1. For the purposes of section 1006 (companies authorised to register under the Companies Acts) “joint stock company” means a company—
   (a) having a permanent paid-up or nominal share capital of fixed amount divided into shares, also of fixed amount, or held and transferable as stock, or divided and held partly in one way and partly in the other, and
   (b) formed on the principle of having for its members the holders of those shares or that stock, and no other persons.

2. Such a company when registered with limited liability under the Companies Acts is deemed a company limited by shares.

1008 Power to make provision by regulations

1. The Secretary of State may make provision by regulations—
(a) for and in connection with registration under section 1006 (companies not formed under the Companies Acts but authorised to register), and
(b) as to the application to companies so registered of the provisions of the Companies Acts.

(2) Without prejudice to the generality of that power, regulations under this section may make provision corresponding to any provision formerly made by Chapter 2 of Part 22 of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6).

(3) Regulations under this section are subject to negative resolution procedure.

1009 Application of provisions to existing companies

The provisions of the Companies Acts apply to companies registered but not formed under any of the former Companies Acts in the same manner as they apply to companies registered under section 1006.

CHAPTER 2
UNREGISTERED COMPANIES

1010 Unregistered companies

(1) This section applies to bodies corporate incorporated in and having a principal place of business in the United Kingdom, other than—
(a) bodies incorporated by, or registered under, a public general Act of Parliament;
(b) bodies not formed for the purpose of carrying on a business that has for its object the acquisition of gain by the body or its individual members;
(c) bodies for the time being exempted from this section by direction of the Secretary of State;
(d) open-ended investment companies.

(2) The Secretary of State may make provision by regulations applying specified provisions of the Companies Acts to all, or any specified description of, the bodies to which this section applies.

(3) The regulations may provide that the specified provisions of the Companies Acts apply subject to any specified limitations and to such adaptations and modifications (if any) as may be specified.

(4) This section does not—
(a) repeal or revoke in whole or in part any enactment, royal charter or other instrument constituting or regulating any body in relation to which provisions of the Companies Acts are applied by regulations under this section, or
(b) restrict the power of Her Majesty to grant a charter in lieu or supplementary to any such charter.

But in relation to any such body the operation of any such enactment, charter or instrument is suspended in so far as it is inconsistent with any of those provisions as they apply for the time being to that body.

(5) Regulations under this section are subject to negative resolution procedure.
PART 34

OVERSEAS COMPANIES

Introductory

1011 Overseas companies

In the Companies Acts an “overseas company” means a company incorporated outside the United Kingdom.

Registration of particulars

1012 Duty to register particulars

(1) The Secretary of State may make provision by regulations requiring an overseas company—
   (a) to deliver to the registrar for registration a return containing specified particulars, and
   (b) to deliver to the registrar with the return specified documents.

(2) The regulations—
   (a) must, in the case of a company other than a Gibraltar company, require the company to register particulars if the company opens a branch in the United Kingdom, and
   (b) may, in the case of a Gibraltar company, require the company to register particulars if the company opens a branch in the United Kingdom, and
   (c) may, in any case, require the registration of particulars in such other circumstances as may be specified.

(3) In subsection (2)—

   “branch” means a branch within the meaning of the Eleventh Company Law Directive (89/666/EEC);

   “Gibraltar company” means a company incorporated in Gibraltar.

(4) The regulations may provide that where a company has registered particulars under this section and any alteration is made—
   (a) in the specified particulars, or
   (b) in any document delivered with the return, the company must deliver to the registrar for registration a return containing specified particulars of the alteration.

(5) The regulations may make provision—
   (a) requiring the return under this section to be delivered for registration to the registrar for a specified part of the United Kingdom, and
   (b) requiring it to be so delivered before the end of a specified period.

(6) The regulations may make different provision according to—
   (a) the place where the company is incorporated, and
   (b) the activities carried on (or proposed to be carried on) by it.

This is without prejudice to the general power to make different provision for different cases.
(7) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

1013 Registered name of overseas company

(1) Regulations under section 1012 (duty to register particulars) must require an overseas company that is required to register particulars to state the name under which it proposes to be registered.

(2) This may be—
   (a) the company’s corporate name (that is, its name under the law of the country or territory in which it is incorporated) or
   (b) an alternative name specified in accordance with section 1014.

(3) Subject only to subsection (5), an EEA company may always be registered under its corporate name.

(4) In any other case, the following provisions of Part 5 (a company’s name) apply in relation to the registration of the name of an overseas company—
   (a) section 54 (prohibited names);
   (b) sections 55 to 57 (sensitive words and expressions);
   (c) section 66 (inappropriate use of indications of company type or legal form);
   (d) sections 67 to 74 (similarity to other names);
   (e) section 75 (provision of misleading information etc);
   (f) section 76 (misleading indication of activities).

(5) The provisions of section 58 (permitted characters etc) apply in every case.

(6) Any reference in the provisions mentioned in subsection (4) or (5) to a change of name shall be read as a reference to registration of a different name under section 1014.

1014 Registration under alternative name

(1) An overseas company that is required to register particulars under section 1012 may at any time deliver to the registrar for registration a statement specifying a name, other than its corporate name, under which it proposes to carry on business in the United Kingdom.

(2) An overseas company that has registered an alternative name may at any time deliver to the registrar of companies for registration a statement specifying a different name under which it proposes to carry on business in the United Kingdom (which may be its corporate name or a further alternative) in substitution for the name previously registered.

(3) The name by which an overseas company is for the time being registered under this section is, for all purposes of the law applying in the United Kingdom, deemed to be the company’s corporate name.

(4) This does not—
   (a) affect the references in this section or section 1013 to the company’s corporate name,
   (b) affect any rights or obligation of the company, or
   (c) render defective any legal proceedings by or against the company.
(5) Any legal proceedings that might have been continued or commenced against the company by its corporate name, or any name previously registered under this section, may be continued or commenced against it by its name for the time being so registered.

Other requirements

1015 Accounts and reports: general

(1) The Secretary of State may make provision by regulations requiring an overseas company that is required to register particulars under section 1012—
   (a) to prepare the like accounts and directors’ report, and
   (b) cause to be prepared such an auditor’s report,

as would be required if the company were formed and registered under this Act.

(2) The regulations may for this purpose apply, with or without modifications, all or any of the provisions of—
   Part 16 (accounts and reports), and
   Part 17 (audit).

(3) The Secretary of State may make provision by regulations requiring an overseas company to deliver to the registrar copies of—
   (a) the accounts and reports prepared in accordance with the regulations, or
   (b) the accounts and reports that it is required to prepare and have audited under the law of the country in which it is incorporated.

(4) Regulations under this section are subject to negative resolution procedure.

1016 Accounts and reports: credit or financial institutions

(1) This section applies to a credit or financial institution—
   (a) that is incorporated or otherwise formed outside the United Kingdom and Gibraltar,
   (b) whose head office is outside the United Kingdom and Gibraltar, and
   (c) that has a branch in the United Kingdom.

(2) In subsection (1) “branch” means a place of business that forms a legally dependent part of the institution and conducts directly all or some of the operations inherent in its business.

(3) The Secretary of State may make provision by regulations requiring an institution to which this section applies—
   (a) to prepare the like accounts and directors’ report, and
   (b) cause to be prepared such an auditor’s report,

as would be required if the institution were a company formed and registered under this Act.

(4) The regulations may for this purpose apply, with or without modifications, all or any of the provisions of—
   Part 16 (accounts and reports), and
   Part 17 (audit).
(5) The Secretary of State may make provision by regulations requiring an institution to which this section applies to deliver to the registrar copies of—
(a) accounts and reports prepared in accordance with the regulations, or
(b) accounts and reports that it is required to prepare and have audited under the law of the country in which the institution has its head office.

(6) Regulations under this section are subject to negative resolution procedure.

1017 Trading disclosures

(1) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision requiring overseas companies carrying on business in the United Kingdom—
(a) to display specified information in specified locations,
(b) to state specified information in specified descriptions of document or communication, and
(c) to provide specified information on request to those they deal with in the course of their business.

(2) The regulations—
(a) shall in every case require disclosure of the name under which the company is registered to carry on business in the United Kingdom, and
(b) may make provision as to the manner in which any specified information is to be displayed, stated or provided.

(3) The regulations may make provision corresponding to that made by—
section 83 (civil consequences of failure to make required disclosure), and
section 84 (criminal consequences of failure to make required disclosure).

(4) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

1018 Other returns etc

(1) This section applies to overseas companies that are required to register particulars under section 1012.

(2) The Secretary of State may make provision by regulations requiring the delivery to the registrar of returns—
(a) by a company to which this section applies that—
(i) is being wound up, or
(ii) becomes or ceases to be subject to insolvency proceedings, or an arrangement or composition or any analogous proceedings;
(b) by the liquidator of a company to which this section applies.

(3) The regulations may specify—
(a) the circumstances in which a return is to be made,
(b) the particulars to be given in it, and
(c) the period within which it is to be made.

(4) The Secretary of State may make provision by regulations requiring notice to be given to the registrar of the appointment in relation to a company to which this section applies of a judicial factor (in Scotland).

(5) The regulations may include provision corresponding to any provision made by section 1120 of this Act (duty to notify registrar of certain appointments).
(6) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

1019 UK branch registers of overseas companies

(1) This section applies where, by virtue of the law in force in a country or territory to which this section applies, companies incorporated under that law have power to keep in the United Kingdom branch registers of their members resident in the United Kingdom.

(2) Her Majesty may by Order in Council direct that—
   (a) section 114 (register of members to be kept available for inspection),
   (b) sections 116 to 120 (rights to inspect and request copies), and
   (c) section 125 (power of court to rectify register),
apply to and in relation to such branch registers, subject to any modifications and adaptations specified in the Order, as they apply to and in relation to the registers of companies subject to those sections.

(3) The countries and territories to which this section applies are—
   (a) the Channel Islands and the Isle of Man, and
   (b) those listed below.

Bangladesh          Malta
Botswana            Nigeria
Cyprus              Pakistan
Dominica            Seychelles
The Gambia          Sierra Leone
Ghana               Singapore
Guyana              South Africa
The Hong Kong Special Administrative Region of the People’s Republic of China
                    Sri Lanka
India               Swaziland
Ireland             Tonga
Kenya               Trinidad and Tobago
Kiribati            Uganda
Lesotho             Zambia
Malawi              Zimbabwe
Malaysia            

Supplementary

1020 Offences

(1) Regulations under this Part may specify the person or persons responsible for complying with any specified requirement of the regulations.

(2) Regulations under this Part may make provision for offences, including provision as to—
   (a) the person or persons liable in the case of any specified contravention of the regulations, and
   (b) circumstances that are, or are not, to be a defence on a charge of such an offence.

(3) The regulations must not provide—
   (a) for imprisonment, or
   (b) for the imposition on summary conviction of a fine exceeding level 5 on the standard scale and, in the case of continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 5 on the standard scale.

(4) In this section “specified” means specified in the regulations.

1021 Disclosure of individual’s residential address: protection from disclosure

Where regulations under section 1012 (overseas companies: duty to register particulars) require an overseas company to register particulars of an individual’s usual residential address, they must contain provision corresponding to that made by Chapter 8 of Part 10 (directors’ residential addresses: protection from disclosure).

1022 Requirement to identify persons authorised to accept service of documents

Regulations under section 1012 (overseas companies: duty to register particulars) must require an overseas company to register—
   (a) particulars identifying every person resident in the United Kingdom authorised to accept service of documents on behalf of the company, or
   (b) a statement that there is no such person.

1023 Registrar to whom returns, notices etc to be delivered

(1) This section applies to an overseas company that is required to register or has registered particulars under section 1012 in more than one part of the United Kingdom.

(2) The Secretary of State may provide by regulations that, in the case of such a company, anything authorised or required to be delivered to the registrar under this Part is to be delivered—
   (a) to the registrar for each part of the United Kingdom in which the company is required to register or has registered particulars, or
   (b) to the registrar for such part or parts of the United Kingdom as may be specified in or determined in accordance with the regulations.

(3) Regulations under this section are subject to negative resolution procedure.
Duty to give notice of ceasing to have registrable presence

(1) The Secretary of State may make provision by regulations requiring an overseas company—
   (a) if it has registered particulars following the opening of a branch, in accordance with regulations under section 1012(2)(a) or (b), to give notice to the registrar if it closes that branch;
   (b) if it has registered particulars in other circumstances, in accordance with regulations under section 1012(2)(c), to give notice to the registrar if the circumstances that gave rise to the obligation to register particulars cease to obtain.

(2) The regulations must provide for the notice to be given to the registrar for the part of the United Kingdom to which the original return of particulars was delivered.

(3) The regulations may specify the period within which notice must be given.

(4) Regulations under this section are subject to negative resolution procedure.

Application of provisions in case of relocation of branch

(1) For the purposes of this Part the relocation of a branch from one part of the United Kingdom to another counts as the closing of one branch and the opening of another.

(2) The relocation of a branch within the same part of the United Kingdom does not.

PART 35

THE REGISTRAR OF COMPANIES

The registrar

The registrar

(1) There shall continue to be—
   (a) a registrar of companies for England and Wales,
   (b) a registrar of companies for Scotland, and
   (c) a registrar of companies for Northern Ireland.

(2) The registrars shall be appointed by the Secretary of State.

(3) In the Companies Acts “the registrar of companies” and “the registrar” mean the registrar of companies for England and Wales, Scotland or Northern Ireland, as the case may require.

(4) References in the Companies Acts to registration in a particular part of the United Kingdom are to registration by the registrar for that part of the United Kingdom.

The registrar’s functions

(1) The registrar shall continue—
   (a) to perform the functions conferred on the registrar—
(i) under the Companies Acts, and
(ii) under the enactments listed in subsection (2), and
(b) to perform such functions on behalf of the Secretary of State, in relation to the registration of companies or other matters, as the Secretary of State may from time to time direct.

(2) The enactments are—
the Joint Stock Companies Acts;
the Newspaper Libel and Registration Act 1881 (c. 60);
the Limited Partnerships Act 1907 (c. 24);
section 53 of the Industrial and Provident Societies Act 1965 (c. 12) or, for Northern Ireland, section 62 of the Industrial and Provident Societies Act (Northern Ireland) 1969 (c. 24 (N.I.));
the Insolvency Act 1986 (c. 45) or, for Northern Ireland, the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989 (S.I. 1989/2405 (N.I. 19));
section 12 of the Statutory Water Companies Act 1991 (c. 58);
sections 3, 4, 6, 63 and 64 of, and Schedule 1 to, the Housing Act 1996 (c. 52) or, for Northern Ireland, Articles 3 and 16 to 32 of the Housing (Northern Ireland) Order 1992 (S.I. 1992/1725 (N.I. 15));
sections 2, 4 and 26 of the Commonwealth Development Corporation Act 1999 (c. 20);
Part 6 and section 366 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (c. 8);
the Limited Liability Partnerships Act 2000 (c. 12);
section 14 of the Insolvency Act 2000 (c. 39) or, for Northern Ireland, Article 11 of the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 2002 (S.I. 2002/3152 (N.I. 6));
section 121 of the Land Registration Act 2002 (c. 9);
section 1212 of this Act.

(3) References in this Act to the functions of the registrar are to functions within subsection (1)(a) or (b).

1028 The registrar’s official seal

The registrar shall have an official seal for the authentication of documents in connection with the performance of the registrar’s functions.

1029 Fees payable to registrar

(1) The Secretary of State may make provision by regulations requiring the payment to the registrar of fees in respect of—
(a) the performance of any of the registrar’s functions, or
(b) the provision by the registrar of services or facilities for purposes incidental to, or otherwise connected with, the performance of any of the registrar’s functions.

(2) The matters for which fees may be charged include—
(a) the performance of a duty imposed on the registrar or the Secretary of State,
(b) the receipt of documents delivered to the registrar, and
(c) the inspection, or provision of copies, of documents kept by the registrar.
(3) The regulations may—
(a) provide for the amount of the fees to be fixed by or determined under the regulations;
(b) provide for different fees to be payable in respect of the same matter in different circumstances;
(c) specify the person by whom any fee payable under the regulations is to be paid;
(d) specify when and how fees are to be paid.

(4) Regulations under this section are subject to negative resolution procedure.

(5) In respect of the performance of functions or the provision of services or facilities—
(a) for which fees are not provided for by regulations, or
(b) in circumstances other than those for which fees are provided for by regulations,
the registrar may determine from time to time what fees (if any) are chargeable.

(6) Fees received by the registrar are to be paid into the Consolidated Fund.

(7) The Limited Partnerships Act 1907 (c. 24) is amended as follows—
(a) in section 16(1) (inspection of statements registered)—
   (i) omit the words “, and there shall be paid for such inspection such fees as may be appointed by the Board of Trade, not exceeding 5p for each inspection”, and
   (ii) omit the words from “and there shall be paid for such certificate” to the end;
(b) in section 17 (power to make rules)—
   (i) omit the words “(but as to fees with the concurrence of the Treasury)”, and
   (ii) omit paragraph (a).

Certificates of incorporation

1030 Public notice of issue of certificate of incorporation

(1) The registrar must cause to be published—
(a) in the Gazette, or
(b) in accordance with section 1082 (alternative means of giving public notice),
notice of the issue by the registrar of any certificate of incorporation of a company.

(2) The notice must state the name and registered number of the company and the date of issue of the certificate.

(3) This section applies to a certificate of incorporation issued under—
(a) section 80 (change of name),
(b) section 88 (Welsh companies), or
(c) any provision of Part 7 (re-registration),
as well as to the certificate issued on a company’s formation.
1031 Right to certificate of incorporation

Any person may require the registrar to provide him with a copy of any certificate of incorporation of a company, signed by the registrar or authenticated by the registrar’s seal.

Registered numbers

1032 Company’s registered numbers

(1) The registrar shall allocate to every company a number, which shall be known as the company’s registered number.

(2) Companies’ registered numbers shall be in such form, consisting of one or more sequences of figures or letters, as the registrar may determine.

(3) The registrar may on adopting a new form of registered number make such changes of existing registered numbers as appear necessary.

(4) A change of a company’s registered number has effect from the date on which the company is notified by the registrar of the change.

(5) For a period of three years beginning with that date any requirement to disclose the company’s registered number imposed by regulations under section 82 or section 1017 (trading disclosures) is satisfied by the use of either the old number or the new.

(6) In this section “company” includes—

(a) an overseas company whose particulars have been registered under section 1012, other than a company that appears to the registrar not to be required to register particulars under that section;

(b) any body to which any provision of the Companies Acts applies by virtue of regulations under section 1010 (unregistered companies).

1033 Registered numbers of branches of overseas company

(1) The registrar shall allocate to every branch of an overseas company whose particulars are registered under section 1012 a number, which shall be known as the branch’s registered number.

(2) Branches’ registered numbers shall be in such form, consisting of one or more sequences of figures or letters, as the registrar may determine.

(3) The registrar may on adopting a new form of registered number make such changes of existing registered numbers as appear necessary.

(4) A change of a branch’s registered number has effect from the date on which the company is notified by the registrar of the change.

(5) For a period of three years beginning with that date any requirement to disclose the branch’s registered number imposed by regulations under section 1017 (trading disclosures) is satisfied by the use of either the old number or the new.
Delivery of documents to the registrar

1034 Registrar’s requirements

(1) The registrar may impose requirements as to the form, authentication and manner of delivery of documents required or authorised to be delivered to the registrar under any enactment.

(2) Where a document required or authorised to be delivered to the registrar under any enactment is required—
   (a) to be certified as an accurate translation, or
   (b) to be certified as a correct copy or verified,
the registrar may impose requirements as to the person, or description of person, by whom the certificate or verification is to be given.
The power conferred by subsection (1) is exercisable in relation to the certificate or verification as if it were a separate document.

(3) As regards the form of the document, the registrar may—
   (a) require the contents of the document to be in a standard form;
   (b) impose requirements for the purpose of enabling the document to be scanned or copied.

(4) As regards authentication, the registrar may—
   (a) require the document to be authenticated by a particular person or a person of a particular description;
   (b) specify the means of authentication of any information which any relevant enactment or the registrar requires to be authenticated;
   (c) require the document to contain or be accompanied by the name or registered number of the company to which it relates (or both).

(5) As regards the manner of delivery, the registrar may specify requirements as to—
   (a) the physical form of the document (for example, hard copy or electronic form);
   (b) the means to be used for delivering the document (for example, by post or electronic means);
   (c) the address to which the document is to be sent;
   (d) in the case of a document to be delivered by electronic means, the hardware and software to be used, and technical specifications (for example, matters relating to protocol, security, anti-virus protection or encryption).

(6) The registrar must secure that as from 1st January 2007 all documents subject to the Directive disclosure requirements (see section 1044) may be delivered to the registrar by electronic means.

(7) The power conferred by this section does not authorise the registrar to require documents to be delivered by electronic means (see section 1035).

(8) Requirements imposed under this section must not be inconsistent with requirements imposed by any enactment for the purposes of the provision requiring or authorising the delivery of the document to the registrar.
1035 Power to require delivery by electronic means

(1) The Secretary of State may make regulations requiring documents that are authorised or required to be delivered to the registrar to be delivered by electronic means.

(2) Any such requirement to deliver documents by electronic means is effective only if registrar’s rules have been published with respect to the detailed requirements for such delivery.

(3) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

1036 Agreement for delivery by electronic means

(1) The registrar may agree with a company that documents relating to the company that are required or authorised to be delivered to the registrar—
   (a) will be delivered by electronic means, except as provided for in the agreement, and
   (b) will conform to such requirements as may be specified in the agreement or specified by the registrar in accordance with the agreement.

(2) An agreement under this section may relate to all or any description of documents to be delivered to the registrar.

(3) Documents in relation to which an agreement is in force under this section must be delivered in accordance with the agreement.

1037 Document not delivered until received

(1) A document is not delivered to the registrar until it is received by the registrar.

(2) Provision may be made by registrar’s rules as to when a document is to be regarded as received.

Defective delivery

1038 Defective delivery

(1) A document delivered to the registrar is not properly delivered unless all the following requirements are met—
   (a) the requirements of the provision under which the document is to be delivered to the registrar as regards—
      (i) the contents of the document, and
      (ii) form, authentication and manner of delivery;
   (b) any applicable requirements under—
       section 1034 (registrar’s requirements),
       section 1035 (power to require delivery by electronic means), or
       section 1036 (agreement for delivery by electronic means);
   (c) any requirements of this Part as to the language in which the document is drawn up and delivered or as to its being accompanied on delivery by a certified translation into English;
   (d) in so far as it consists of or includes names and addresses, any requirements of this Part as to permitted characters, letters or symbols
or as to its being accompanied on delivery by a certificate as to the transliteration of any element;
(e) any requirement of regulations under section 1048 (use of unique identifiers);
(f) any requirements as regards payment of a fee in respect of its receipt by the registrar.

(2) The registrar may accept (and register) a document that does not comply with those requirements.

(3) The acceptance (or registration) of such a document by the registrar does not affect—
(a) any liability for failure to comply with the requirements of the provision under which the document is delivered to the registrar as regards the contents of the document;
(b) the continuing obligation to comply with the requirements mentioned in subsection (1);
(c) the exercise of the registrar’s powers under—
section 1039 (informal correction), or
section 1042 (notice to remedy defective delivery).

(4) No objection may be taken to the legal effect of any such action taken by the registrar on the ground that the requirements mentioned in subsection (1) above are not met.

1039 Informal correction of document

(1) A document delivered to the registrar may be corrected by the registrar if it appears to the registrar to be incomplete or internally inconsistent.

(2) This power is exercisable only—
(a) on instructions, and
(b) if the company has given (and has not withdrawn) its consent to instructions being given under this section.

(3) The following requirements must be met as regards the instructions—
(a) the instructions must be given in response to an enquiry by the registrar;
(b) the registrar must be satisfied that the person giving the instructions is authorised to do so—
(i) by the person by whom the document was delivered, or
(ii) by the company to which the document relates;
(c) the instructions must meet any requirements of registrar’s rules as to—
(i) the form and manner in which they are given, and
(ii) authentication.

(4) The company’s consent to instructions being given under this section (and any withdrawal of such consent)—
(a) may be in hard copy or electronic form, and
(b) must be notified to the registrar.

(5) This section applies in relation to documents delivered under Part 12 of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6) (registration of charges) by a person other than the
company as if the references to the company were to the company or the person by whom the document was delivered.

(6) A document that is corrected under this section is treated, for the purposes of any enactment relating to its delivery, as having been delivered when the correction is made.

1040 Voluntary replacement of document previously delivered

(1) The registrar may accept a replacement for a document previously delivered that did not comply with the requirements for proper delivery.

(2) A replacement document must not be accepted unless the registrar is satisfied that it is delivered by—

(a) the person by whom the original document was delivered, or
(b) the company to which the original document relates,
and that it complies with the requirements for proper delivery.

(3) The power of the registrar to impose requirements as to the form and manner of delivery includes power to impose requirements as to the identification of the original document and the delivery of the replacement in a form and manner enabling it to be associated with the original.

(4) For the purposes of this section the requirements for proper delivery are those listed in section 1038(1).

1041 Exclusion of unnecessary material

(1) If a document delivered to the registrar contains unnecessary material that in the opinion of the registrar ought to be excluded from the register, the provisions of—

section 1038(2) to (4) (defective delivery),
section 1039 (informal correction of document), and
section 1042 (registrar’s notice to remedy defective delivery),
apply as they apply to a document that does not meet the requirements listed in section 1038(1) (requirements for proper delivery).

(2) “Unnecessary material” means material that—

(a) is not needed to comply with an obligation under any enactment, and
(b) is not specifically authorised to be delivered to the registrar.

(3) For this purpose an obligation to deliver a document of a particular description, or conforming to certain requirements, is regarded as not extending to anything that is not needed for a document of that description or, as the case may be, conforming to those requirements.

1042 Registrar’s notice to remedy defective delivery

(1) This section applies where a document delivered to the registrar—

(a) does not meet the requirements for proper delivery, and
(b) is not either corrected under section 1039 (informal correction by registrar) or replaced under section 1040 (voluntary replacement).

The “requirements for proper delivery” are those mentioned in section 1038(1).

(2) The registrar may give notice—
(a) to the person by whom the document was delivered (if the identity, and name and address of that person are known), or
(b) to the company to which the document relates (if notice cannot be given under paragraph (a) and the identity of that company is known).

(3) The notice must—
(a) state in what respects the document does not appear to meet the requirements for proper delivery,
(b) state the date on which it is issued, and
(c) require a replacement document complying with the requirements for proper delivery to be delivered to the registrar within 14 days after that date.

(4) If no replacement document is delivered within the period specified, an offence is committed by—
(a) the company, and
(b) every officer of the company who is in default.

(5) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (4) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 5 on the standard scale.

Public notice of receipt of certain documents

(1) The registrar must cause to be published—
(a) in the Gazette, or
(b) in accordance with section 1082 (alternative means of giving public notice),
notice of the receipt by the registrar of any document that, on receipt, is subject to the Directive disclosure requirements (see section 1044).

(2) The notice must state the name and registered number of the company, the description of document and the date of receipt.

(3) The registrar is not required to cause notice of the receipt of a document to be published before the date of incorporation of the company to which the document relates.

Documents subject to Directive disclosure requirements

(1) The documents subject to the “Directive disclosure requirements” are as follows.

The requirements referred to are those of Article 3 of the First Company Law Directive (68/151/EEC), as amended, extended and applied.

(2) In the case of every company—
A. Constitutional documents
1. The company’s memorandum and articles.
2. Any amendment of the company’s articles (including every resolution or agreement required to be embodied in or annexed to copies of the company’s articles issued by the company).
3. After any amendment of the company’s articles, the text of the articles as amended.
4. Any notice of a change of the company’s name.

B. Directors
1. The statement of proposed officers required on formation of the company.
2. Notification of any change among the company’s directors.
3. Notification of any change in the particulars of directors required to be delivered to the registrar.

C. Accounts, reports and returns
1. All documents required to be delivered to the registrar under section 449 (annual accounts and reports).
2. The company’s annual return.

D. Registered office
Notification of any change of the company’s registered office.

E. Winding up
1. Copy of any winding-up order in respect of the company.
2. Notice of the appointment of liquidators.
3. Order for the dissolution of a company on a winding up.
4. Return by a liquidator of the final meeting of a company on a winding up.

(3) In the case of a public company—

Share capital
1. Any statement of capital and initial shareholdings.
2. Copy of any resolution under section 584 or 585 of this Act (disapplication of pre-emption rights).
3. Copy of any report under section 103 or 104 of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6) as to the value of a non-cash asset.
4. Any statement of compliance delivered under section 775 of this Act (statement that company meets conditions for issue of trading certificate).
5. Notification (under section 122 of the Companies Act 1985) of the redemption of shares and the statement of capital accompanying it.
6. Statement or notice delivered under section 128 of that Act (registration of particulars of special rights).
7. Statement of capital accompanying order delivered under section 138 of that Act (order of court confirming reduction of capital).
8. Statement of capital accompanying return delivered under section 169 of that Act (return of details of company’s purchase of own shares).
9. Statement of capital accompanying notice given under section 639 of this Act (notice by company of redenomination of shares).
10. Statement of capital accompanying notice given under section 641 of this Act (notice by company of reduction of capital in connection with redenomination of shares).
11. Any return of allotment and the statement of capital accompanying it.

Mergers and divisions
1. Copy of any draft of the terms of a scheme required to be delivered to the registrar under paragraph 2(1) of Schedule 15B to the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6).
2. Copy of any order under section 425(2) or 427 of that Act in respect of a compromise or arrangement to which section 427A of that Act applies.

(4) Where a private company re-registers as a public company (see section 96)—
(a) the last statement of capital relating to the company received by the registrar under any provision of the Companies Acts becomes subject to the Directive disclosure requirements, and
(b) section 1043 (public notice of receipt of certain documents) applies as if the statement had been received by the registrar when the re-registration takes effect.

(5) In the case of an overseas company, such particulars, returns and other documents required to be delivered under Part 34 of this Act as may be specified by the Secretary of State by regulations.

(6) Regulations under subsection (5) are subject to negative resolution procedure.

1045 Effect of failure to give public notice

(1) A company is not entitled to rely against other persons on the happening of any event to which this section applies unless—
   (a) the event has been officially notified at the material time, or
   (b) the company shows that the person concerned knew of the event at the material time.

(2) The events to which this section applies are—
   (a) an amendment of the company’s articles,
   (b) a change among the company’s directors,
   (c) (as regards service of any document on the company) a change of the company’s registered office,
   (d) the making of a winding-up order in respect of the company, or
   (e) the appointment of a liquidator in a voluntary winding up of the company.

(3) If the material time falls—
   (a) on or before the 15th day after the date of official notification, or
   (b) where the 15th day was not a working day, on or before the next day that was,
   the company is not entitled to rely on the happening of the event as against a person who shows that he was unavoidably prevented from knowing of the event at that time.

(4) “Official notification” means—
   (a) in relation to an amendment of the company’s articles, notification in accordance with section 1043 (public notice of receipt by registrar of certain documents) of the amendment and the amended text of the articles;
   (b) in relation to anything else stated in a document subject to the Directive disclosure requirements, notification of that document in accordance with that section;
   (c) in relation to the appointment of a liquidator in a voluntary winding up, notification of that event in accordance with section 109 of the Insolvency Act 1986 (c. 45) or Article 95 of the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989 (S.I.1989/2405 (N.I. 19)).
1046 The register

(1) The registrar shall continue to keep records of—
   (a) the information contained in documents delivered to the registrar
       under any enactment,
   (b) certificates of incorporation issued by the registrar, and
   (c) certificates issued by the registrar under section 401(2) or 418 of the
       Companies Act 1985 (c. 6) (certificates of registration of charge).

(2) The records relating to companies are referred to collectively in the Companies
    Acts as “the register”.

(3) Information deriving from documents subject to the Directive disclosure
    requirements (see section 1044) that are delivered to the registrar on or after 1st
    January 2007 must be kept by the registrar in electronic form.

(4) Subject to that, information contained in documents delivered to the registrar
    may be recorded and kept in any form the registrar thinks fit, provided it is
    possible to inspect it and produce a copy of it.
    This is sufficient compliance with any duty of the registrar to keep, file or
    register the document or to record the information contained in it.

(5) The records kept by the registrar must be such that information relating to a
    company is associated with that company, in such manner as the registrar may
    determine, so as to enable all the information relating to the company to be
    retrieved.

1047 Annotation of the register

(1) The registrar must place a note in the register recording—
   (a) the date on which a document is delivered to the registrar;
   (b) if a document is corrected under section 1039, the nature and date of the
       correction;
   (c) if a document is replaced (whether or not material derived from it is
       removed), the fact that it has been replaced and the date of delivery of
       the replacement;
   (d) if material is removed—
       (i) what was removed (giving a general description of its contents),
       (ii) under what power, and
       (iii) the date on which that was done.

(2) The Secretary of State may make provision by regulations—
   (a) authorising or requiring the registrar to annotate the register in such
       other circumstances as may be specified in the regulations, and
   (b) as to the contents of any such annotation.

(3) No annotation is required in the case of a document that by virtue of section
    1038 (defective delivery) is not registered.

(4) A note may be removed if it no longer serves any useful purpose.
(5) Any duty or power of the registrar with respect to annotation of the register is subject to the court’s power under section 1063 (powers of court on ordering removal of material from the register) to direct—
   (a) that a note be removed from the register, or
   (b) that no note shall be made of the removal of material that is the subject of the court’s order.

(6) Notes placed in the register in accordance with subsection (1), or in pursuance of regulations under subsection (2), are part of the register for all purposes of the Companies Acts.

(7) Regulations under this section are subject to negative resolution procedure.

1048 Allocation of unique identifiers

(1) The Secretary of State may make provision for the use, in connection with the register, of reference numbers ("unique identifiers") to identify each person who—
   (a) is a director of a company,
   (b) is secretary (or a joint secretary) of a public company,
   (c) is appointed as an authorised signatory of a company, or
   (d) in the case of an overseas company whose particulars are registered under section 1012, holds any such position as may be specified for the purposes of this section by regulations under that section.

(2) The regulations may—
   (a) provide that a unique identifier may be in such form, consisting of one or more sequences of letters or numbers, as the registrar may from time to time determine;
   (b) make provision for the allocation of unique identifiers by the registrar;
   (c) require there to be included, in any specified description of documents delivered to the registrar, as well as a statement of the person’s name—
      (i) a statement of the person’s unique identifier, or
      (ii) a statement that the person has not been allocated a unique identifier;
   (d) enable the registrar to take steps where a person appears to have more than one unique identifier to discontinue the use of all but one of them.

(3) The regulations may contain provision for the application of the scheme in relation to persons appointed, and documents registered, before the commencement of this Act.

(4) The regulations may make different provision for different descriptions of person and different descriptions of document.

(5) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

1049 Preservation of original documents

(1) The originals of documents delivered to the registrar in hard copy form must be kept for three years after they are received by the registrar, after which they may be destroyed provided the information contained in them has been recorded in the register.
   This is subject to section 1053(3) (extent of obligation to retain material not available for public inspection).
(2) The registrar is under no obligation to keep the originals of documents delivered in electronic form, provided the information contained in them has been recorded in the register.

(3) This section applies to documents held by the registrar when this section comes into force as well as to documents subsequently received.

1050 Records relating to companies that have been dissolved etc

(1) This section applies where—
   (a) a company is dissolved,
   (b) an overseas company ceases to have any connection with the United Kingdom by virtue of which it is required to register particulars under section 1012, or
   (c) a credit or financial institution ceases to be within section 1016 (overseas institutions required to file accounts with the registrar).

(2) At any time after two years from the date on which it appears to the registrar that—
   (a) the company has been dissolved,
   (b) the overseas company has ceased to have any connection with the United Kingdom by virtue of which it is required to register particulars under section 1012, or
   (c) the credit or financial institution has ceased to be within section 1016 (overseas institutions required to file accounts with the registrar),

   the registrar may direct that records relating to the company or institution may be removed to the Public Record Office or, as the case may be, the Public Records Office for Northern Ireland.

(3) Records in respect of which such a direction is given shall be disposed of under the enactments relating to that Office and the rules made under them.

(4) In subsection (1)(a) “company” includes a company provisionally or completely registered under the Joint Stock Companies Act 1844.

(5) This section does not extend to Scotland.

Inspection etc of the register

1051 Inspection of the register

(1) Any person may inspect the register.

(2) The right of inspection extends to the originals of documents delivered to the registrar in hard copy form if, and only if, the record kept by the registrar of the contents of the document is illegible or unavailable.

The period for which such originals are to be kept is limited by section 1049(1).

(3) This section has effect subject to section 1053 (material not available for public inspection).

1052 Right to copy of material on the register

(1) Any person may require a copy of any material on the register.
(2) The fee for any such copy of material derived from a document subject to the Directive disclosure requirements (see section 1044), whether in hard copy or electronic form, must not exceed the administrative cost of providing it.

(3) This section has effect subject to section 1053 (material not available for public inspection).

1053 Material not available for public inspection

(1) The following material must not be made available by the registrar for public inspection—

(a) protected information within section 242(1) (directors’ residential addresses: restriction on disclosure by registrar) or any corresponding provision of regulations under section 1012 (overseas companies);

(b) the contents of any document sent to the registrar containing views expressed pursuant to section 57 (comments on proposal by company to use certain words or expressions in company name);

(c) any application to the registrar under section 990 (application for administrative restoration to the register) that has not yet been determined or was not successful;

(d) any document received by the registrar in connection with the giving or withdrawal of consent under section 1039 (informal correction of documents);

(e) any application or other document delivered to the registrar under section 1054 (application to make address unavailable for public inspection) and any address in respect of which such an application is successful;

(f) any application or other document delivered to the registrar under section 1061 (application for rectification of register);

(g) any court order under section 1062 (rectification of the register under court order) that the court has directed under section 1063 (powers of court on ordering removal of material from the register) is not to be made available for public inspection;

(h) the contents of—

(i) any instrument creating or evidencing a charge and delivered to the registrar under section 395 of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6) (registration of company charges: England and Wales or Northern Ireland), or

(ii) any certified copy of an instrument creating or evidencing a charge and delivered to the registrar under section 410 of that Act (registration of company charges: Scotland);

(i) any e-mail address, identification code or password deriving from a document delivered for the purpose of authorising or facilitating electronic filing procedures or providing information by telephone;

(j) the contents of any documents held by the registrar pending a decision of the registrar of community interest companies under section 36 or 38 of the Companies (Audit, Investigations and Community Enterprise) Act 2004 (c. 27) (decision on eligibility for registration as community interest company) and that the registrar is not later required to record;

(k) any other material excluded from public inspection by or under any other enactment.
A restriction applying by reference to material deriving from a particular description of document does not affect the availability for public inspection of the same information contained in material derived from another description of document in relation to which no such restriction applies.

Material to which this section applies need not be retained by the registrar for longer than appears to the registrar reasonably necessary for the purposes for which the material was delivered to the registrar.

### 1054 Application to registrar to make address unavailable for public inspection

(1) The Secretary of State may make provision by regulations requiring the registrar, on application, to make an address on the register unavailable for public inspection.

(2) The regulations may make provision as to—
   (a) who may make an application,
   (b) the grounds on which an application may be made,
   (c) the information to be included in and documents to accompany an application,
   (d) the notice to be given of an application and of its outcome, and
   (e) how an application is to be determined.

(3) Provision under subsection (2)(e) may in particular—
   (a) confer a discretion on the registrar;
   (b) provide for a question to be referred to a person other than the registrar for the purposes of determining the application.

(4) An application must specify the address to be removed from the register and indicate where on the register it is.

(5) The regulations may provide—
   (a) that an address is not to be made unavailable for public inspection under this section unless replaced by a service address, and
   (b) that in such a case the application must specify a service address.

(6) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

### 1055 Form of application for inspection or copy

(1) The registrar may specify the form and manner in which application is to be made for—
   (a) inspection under section 1051, or
   (b) a copy under section 1052.

(2) As from 1st January 2007, applications in respect of documents subject to the Directive disclosure requirements may be submitted to the registrar in hard copy or electronic form, as the applicant chooses. This does not affect the registrar’s power under subsection (1) above to impose requirements in respect of other matters.

### 1056 Form and manner in which copies to be provided

(1) The following provisions apply as regards the form and manner in which copies are to be provided under section 1052.
(2) As from 1st January 2007, copies of documents subject to the Directive disclosure requirements must be provided in hard copy or electronic form, as the applicant chooses.

This is subject to the following proviso.

(3) The registrar is not obliged by subsection (2) to provide copies in electronic form of a document that was delivered to the registrar in hard copy form if—

(a) the document was delivered to the registrar on or before 31st December 1996, or

(b) the document was delivered to the registrar on or before 31st December 2006 and ten years or more elapsed between the date of delivery and the date of receipt of the first application for a copy on or after 1st January 2007.

(4) Subject to the preceding provisions of this section, the registrar may determine the form and manner in which copies are to be provided.

1057 Certification of copies as accurate

(1) Copies provided under section 1052 in hard copy form must be certified as true copies unless the applicant dispenses with such certification.

(2) Copies so provided in electronic form must not be certified as true copies unless the applicant expressly requests such certification.

(3) A copy provided under section 1052, certified by the registrar (whose official position it is unnecessary to prove) to be an accurate record of the contents of the original document, is in all legal proceedings admissible in evidence—

(a) as of equal validity with the original document, and

(b) as evidence (in Scotland, sufficient evidence) of any fact stated in the original document of which direct oral evidence would be admissible.

(4) The Secretary of State may make provision by regulations as to the manner in which such a certificate is to be provided in a case where the copy is provided in electronic form.

(5) Except in the case of documents that are subject to the Directive disclosure requirements (see section 1044), copies provided by the registrar may, instead of being certified in writing to be an accurate record, be sealed with the registrar’s official seal.

1058 Issue of process for production of records kept by the registrar

(1) No process for compelling the production of a record kept by the registrar shall issue from any court except with the permission of the court.

(2) Any such process shall bear on it a statement that it is issued with the permission of the court.

Correction or removal of material on the register

1059 Registrar’s notice to resolve inconsistency on the register

(1) Where it appears to the registrar that the information contained in a document delivered to the registrar is inconsistent with other information on the register, the registrar may give notice to the company to which the document relates—
(a) stating in what respects the information contained in it appears to be inconsistent with other information on the register, and
(b) requiring the company to take steps to resolve the inconsistency.

(2) The notice must—
(a) state the date on which it is issued, and
(b) require the delivery to the registrar, within 14 days after that date, of such replacement or additional documents as may be required to resolve the inconsistency.

(3) If the necessary documents are not delivered within the period specified, an offence is committed by—
(a) the company, and
(b) every officer of the company who is in default.

(4) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (3) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 5 on the standard scale.

1060 Administrative removal of material from the register

(1) The registrar may remove from the register anything that there was power, but no duty, to include.

(2) This power is exercisable, in particular, so as to remove—
(a) unnecessary material within the meaning of section 1041, and
(b) material derived from a document that has been replaced under—
section 1040 (voluntary replacement of document previously delivered),
section 1042 (notice to remedy defective delivery), or
section 1059 (notice to remedy inconsistency on the register).

(3) This section does not authorise the removal from the register of—
(a) anything whose registration has had legal consequences in relation to the company as regards—
(i) its formation,
(ii) a change of name,
(iii) its re-registration,
(iv) its becoming or ceasing to be a community interest company,
(v) a reduction of capital,
(vi) a change of registered office,
(vii) the registration of a charge, or
(viii) its dissolution;
(b) an address that is a person’s registered address for the purposes of section 1105 (service of documents on directors, secretaries and others).

(4) On or before removing any material under this section (otherwise than at the request of the company) the registrar must give notice—
(a) to the person by whom the material was delivered (if the identity, and name and address of that person are known), or
(b) to the company to which the material relates (if notice cannot be given under paragraph (a) and the identity of that company is known).
(5) The notice must—
   (a) state what material the registrar proposes to remove, or has removed, and on what grounds, and
   (b) state the date on which it is issued.

1061 Rectification of register on application to registrar

(1) The Secretary of State may make provision by regulations requiring the registrar, on application, to remove from the register material of a description specified in the regulations that—
   (a) derives from anything invalid or ineffective or that was done without the authority of the company, or
   (b) is factually inaccurate, or is derived from something that is factually inaccurate or forged.

(2) The regulations may make provision as to—
   (a) who may make an application,
   (b) the information to be included in and documents to accompany an application,
   (c) the notice to be given of an application and of its outcome,
   (d) a period in which objections to an application may be made, and
   (e) how an application is to be determined.

(3) An application must—
   (a) specify what is to be removed from the register and indicate where on the register it is, and
   (b) be accompanied by a statement that the material specified in the application complies with this section and the regulations.

(4) If no objections are made to the application, the registrar may accept the statement as sufficient evidence that the material specified in the application should be removed from the register.

(5) Where anything is removed from the register under this section the registration of which had legal consequences as mentioned in section 1060(3), any person appearing to the court to have a sufficient interest may apply to the court for such consequential orders as appear just with respect to the legal effect (if any) to be accorded to the material by virtue of its having appeared on the register.

(6) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

1062 Rectification of the register under court order

(1) The registrar shall remove from the register any material—
   (a) that derives from anything that the court has declared to be invalid or ineffective, or to have been done without the authority of the company, or
   (b) that a court declares to be factually inaccurate, or to be derived from something that is factually inaccurate, or forged,
and that the court directs should be removed from the register.

(2) The court order must specify what is to be removed from the register and indicate where on the register it is.
(3) The court must not make an order for the removal from the register of anything the registration of which had legal consequences as mentioned in section 1060(3) unless satisfied—
   (a) that the presence of the material on the register has caused, or may cause, damage to the company, and
   (b) that the company’s interest in removing the material outweighs any interest of other persons in the material continuing to appear on the register.

(4) Where in such a case the court does make an order for removal, it may make such consequential orders as appear just with respect to the legal effect (if any) to be accorded to the material by virtue of its having appeared on the register.

(5) A copy of the court’s order must be sent to the registrar for registration.

(6) This section does not apply where the court has other, specific powers to deal with the matter, for example under—
   (a) the provisions of Part 16 of this Act relating to the revision of defective accounts and reports, or
   (b) section 404 or 420 of the Companies Act 1985 (rectification of the register of charges).

1063 Powers of court on ordering removal of material from the register

(1) Where the court makes an order for the removal of anything from the register under section 1062 (rectification of the register), it may give directions under this section.

(2) It may direct that any note on the register that is related to the material that is the subject of the court’s order shall be removed from the register.

(3) It may direct that its order shall not be available for public inspection as part of the register.

(4) It may direct—
   (a) that no note shall be made on the register as a result of its order, or
   (b) that any such note shall be restricted to such matters as may be specified by the court.

(5) The court shall not give any direction under this section unless it is satisfied—
   (a) that—
      (i) the presence on the register of the note or, as the case may be, of an unrestricted note, or
      (ii) the availability for public inspection of the court’s order, may cause damage to the company, and
   (b) that the company’s interest in non-disclosure outweighs any interest of other persons in disclosure.

1064 Public notice of removal of certain material from the register

(1) The registrar must cause to be published—
   (a) in the Gazette, or
   (b) in accordance with section 1082 (alternative means of giving public notice),
notice of the removal from the register of any document subject to the Directive disclosure requirements (see section 1044) or of any material derived from such a document.

(2) The notice must state the name and registered number of the company, the description of document and the date of receipt.

**The registrar’s index of company names**

1065 **The registrar’s index of company names**

(1) The registrar of companies must keep an index of the names of the companies and other bodies to which this section applies.

This is “the registrar’s index of company names”.

(2) This section applies to—

(a) companies as defined by section 1 of this Act;

(b) companies registered under the Companies Acts by virtue of section 1006 (companies not formed under the Companies Acts but able to register);

(c) any body to which any provision of the Companies Acts applies by virtue of regulations under section 1010 (unregistered companies); and

(d) overseas companies that have registered particulars with the registrar under Part 34, other than companies that appear to the registrar not to be required to do so.

(3) This section also applies to—

(a) limited partnerships registered in the United Kingdom;

(b) limited liability partnerships incorporated in the United Kingdom;

(c) European Economic Interest Groupings registered in the United Kingdom;

(d) open-ended investment companies authorised in the United Kingdom;

(e) societies registered under the Industrial and Provident Societies Act 1965 (c. 12) or the Industrial and Provident Societies Act (Northern Ireland) 1969 (c. 24 (N.I.)).

(4) The Secretary of State may by order amend subsection (3)—

(a) by the addition of any description of body;

(b) by the deletion of any description of body.

(5) Any such order is subject to negative resolution procedure.

1066 **Right to inspect index**

Any person may inspect the registrar’s index of company names.

1067 **Power to amend enactments relating to bodies other than companies**

(1) The Secretary of State may by regulations amend the enactments relating to any description of body for the time being within section 1065(3) (bodies other than companies whose names are to be entered in the registrar’s index), so as to—
(a) require the registrar to be provided with information as to the names of bodies registered, incorporated, authorised or otherwise regulated under those enactments, and

(b) make provision in relation to such bodies corresponding to that made by—

section 67 (company name not to be the same as another in the index), and

sections 68 and 69 (power to direct change of company name in case of similarity to existing name).

(2) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

Language requirements: translation

1068 Application of language requirements

(1) The provisions listed below apply to all documents required to be delivered to the registrar under any provision of—

(a) the Companies Acts, or

(b) the Insolvency Act 1986 (c. 45) or the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989 (S.I. 1989/2405 (N.I. 19)).

(2) The Secretary of State may make provision by regulations applying all or any of the listed provisions, with or without modifications, in relation to documents delivered to the registrar under any other enactment.

(3) The provisions are—

section 1069 (documents to be drawn up and delivered in English),

section 1070 (documents relating to Welsh companies),

section 1071 (documents that may be drawn up and delivered in other languages),

section 1073 (certified translations).

(4) Regulations under this section are subject to the negative resolution procedure.

1069 Documents to be drawn up and delivered in English

(1) The general rule is that all documents required to be delivered to the registrar must be drawn up and delivered in English.

(2) This is subject to—

section 1070 (documents relating to Welsh companies) and

section 1071 (documents that may be drawn up and delivered in other languages).

1070 Documents relating to Welsh companies

(1) Documents relating to a Welsh company may be drawn up and delivered to the registrar in Welsh.

(2) On delivery to the registrar any such document must be accompanied by a certified translation into English, unless it is—

(a) of a description excepted from that requirement by regulations made by the Secretary of State, or
(b) in a form prescribed in Welsh (or partly in Welsh and partly in English) by virtue of section 26 of the Welsh Language Act 1993 (c. 38).

(3) Where a document is properly delivered to the registrar in Welsh without a certified translation into English, the registrar must obtain such a translation if the document is to be available for public inspection. The translation is treated as if delivered to the registrar in accordance with the same provision as the original.

(4) A Welsh company may deliver to the registrar a certified translation into Welsh of any document in English that relates to the company and is or has been delivered to the registrar.

(5) Section 1071 (which requires certified translations into English of documents delivered to the registrar in another language) does not apply to a document relating to a Welsh company that is drawn up and delivered in Welsh.

1071 Documents that may be drawn up and delivered in other languages

(1) Documents to which this section applies may be drawn up and delivered to the registrar in a language other than English, but when delivered to the registrar they must be accompanied by a certified translation into English.

(2) This section applies to—
   (a) agreements required to be forwarded to the registrar under Chapter 3 of Part 3 of this Act (agreements affecting the company’s constitution);
   (b) documents required to be delivered under section 406(2)(e) or section 407(2)(f) (company included in accounts of larger group: required to deliver copy of group accounts);
   (c) instruments or copy instruments required to be delivered under Part 12 of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6) (registration of charges);
   (d) documents of any other description specified in regulations made by the Secretary of State.

(3) Regulations under this section are subject to negative resolution procedure.

1072 Voluntary filing of translations

(1) A company may deliver to the registrar one or more certified translations of any document relating to the company that is or has been delivered to the registrar.

(2) The Secretary of State may by regulations specify—
   (a) the languages, and
   (b) the descriptions of document,
   in relation to which this facility is available.

(3) The regulations must provide that it is available as from 1st January 2007—
   (a) in relation to all the official languages of the European Union, and
   (b) in relation to all documents subject to the Directive disclosure requirements (see section 1044).

(4) The power of the registrar to impose requirements as to the form and manner of delivery includes power to impose requirements as to the identification of the original document and the delivery of the translation in a form and manner enabling it to be associated with the original.
(5) Regulations under this section are subject to negative resolution procedure.

(6) This section does not apply where the original document was delivered to the registrar before this section came into force.

1073 Certified translations

(1) In this Part a “certified translation” means a translation certified to be a correct translation.

(2) In the case of any discrepancy between the original language version of a document and a certified translation—

(a) the company may not rely on the translation as against a third party, but

(b) a third party may rely on the translation unless the company shows that the third party had knowledge of the original.

(3) A “third party” means a person other than the company or the registrar.

Language requirements: transliteration

1074 Transliteration of names and addresses: permitted characters

(1) Names and addresses in a document delivered to the registrar must contain only letters, characters and symbols (including accents and other diacritical marks) that are permitted.

(2) The Secretary of State may make provision by regulations—

(a) as to the letters, characters and symbols (including accents and other diacritical marks) that are permitted, and

(b) permitting or requiring the delivery of documents in which names and addresses have not been transliterated into a permitted form.

(3) Regulations under this section are subject to negative resolution procedure.

1075 Transliteration of names and addresses: voluntary transliteration into Roman characters

(1) Where a name or address is or has been delivered to the registrar in a permitted form using other than Roman characters, the company may deliver to the registrar a transliteration into Roman characters.

(2) The power of the registrar to impose requirements as to the form and manner of delivery includes power to impose requirements as to the identification of the original document and the delivery of the transliteration in a form and manner enabling it to be associated with the original.

1076 Transliteration of names and addresses: certification

(1) The Secretary of State may make provision by regulations requiring the certification of transliterations and prescribing the form of certification.

(2) Different provision may be made for compulsory and voluntary transliterations.

(3) Regulations under this section are subject to negative resolution procedure.
**Supplementary provisions**

**1077 General false statement offence**

(1) It is an offence for a person knowingly or recklessly—
   (a) to deliver or cause to be delivered to the registrar, for any purpose of the Companies Acts, a document, or
   (b) to make to the registrar, for any such purpose, a statement, that is misleading, false or deceptive in a material particular.

(2) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—
   (a) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or a fine (or both);
   (b) on summary conviction—
      (i) in England and Wales, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding twelve months or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both);
      (ii) in Scotland or Northern Ireland, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months, or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both).

**1078 Enforcement of company’s filing obligations**

(1) This section applies where a company has made default in complying with any obligation under the Companies Acts—
   (a) to deliver a document to the registrar, or
   (b) to give notice to the registrar of any matter.

(2) The registrar, or any member or creditor of the company, may give notice to the company requiring it to comply with the obligation.

(3) If the company fails to make good the default within 14 days after service of the notice, the registrar, or any member or creditor of the company, may apply to the court for an order directing the company, and any specified officer of it, to make good the default within a specified time.

(4) The court’s order may provide that all costs (in Scotland, expenses) of or incidental to the application are to be borne by the company or by any officers of it responsible for the default.

(5) This section does not affect the operation of any enactment making it an offence, or imposing a civil penalty, for the default.

**1079 Application of provisions about documents and delivery**

(1) In this Part—
   (a) “document” means information recorded in any form, and
   (b) references to delivering a document include forwarding, lodging, registering, sending, producing or submitting it or (in the case of a notice) giving it.

(2) Except as otherwise provided, this Part applies in relation to the supply to the registrar of information otherwise than in documentary form as it applies in relation to the delivery of a document.
1080 Provisions requiring copies of court orders to be delivered to the registrar

In the following provisions (which require an office copy of certain court orders to be delivered to the registrar) for “an office copy” substitute “a copy”—

section 425(3) of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6) (order sanctioning compromise or arrangement);
section 427(5) of that Act (order sanctioning compromise or arrangement);
section 201(4) of the Insolvency Act 1986 (c. 45) and Article 166(4) of the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989 (S.I. 1989/2405 (N.I. 19)) (order deferring date at which dissolution of company after winding up is to take effect).

1081 Supplementary provisions relating to electronic communications

(1) Registrar’s rules may require a company to give any necessary consents to the use of electronic means for communications by the registrar to the company as a condition of making use of any facility to deliver material to the registrar by electronic means.

(2) A document that is required to be signed by the registrar or authenticated by the registrar’s seal shall, if sent by electronic means, be authenticated in such manner as may be specified by registrar’s rules.

1082 Alternative to publication in the Gazette

(1) Notices that would otherwise need to be published by the registrar in the Gazette may instead be published by such means as may from time to time be approved by the registrar in accordance with regulations made by the Secretary of State.

(2) The Secretary of State may make provision by regulations as to what alternative means may be approved.

(3) The regulations may, in particular—
   (a) require the use of electronic means;
   (b) require the same means to be used—
      (i) for all notices or for all notices of specified descriptions, and
      (ii) whether the company is registered in England and Wales, Scotland or Northern Ireland;
   (c) impose conditions as to the manner in which access to the notices is to be made available.

(4) Regulations under this section are subject to negative resolution procedure.

(5) Before starting to publish notices by means approved under this section the registrar must publish at least one notice to that effect in the Gazette.

(6) Nothing in this section prevents the registrar from giving public notice both in the Gazette and by means approved under this section.
   In that case, the requirement of public notice is met when notice is first given by either means.
1083 Registrar’s rules

(1) Where any provision of this Part enables the registrar to make provision, or impose requirements, as to any matter, the registrar may make such provision or impose such requirements by means of rules under this section. This is without prejudice to the making of such provision or the imposing of such requirements by other means.

(2) Registrar’s rules —
(a) may make different provision for different cases, and
(b) may allow the registrar to disapply or modify any of the rules.

(3) The registrar must—
(a) publicise the rules in a manner appropriate to bring them to the notice of persons affected by them, and
(b) make copies of the rules available to the public (in hard copy or electronic form).

1084 Payments into the Consolidated Fund

Nothing in the Companies Acts or any other enactment as to the payment of receipts into the Consolidated Fund shall be read as affecting the operation in relation to the registrar of section 3(1) of the Government Trading Funds Act 1973 (c. 63).

1085 Contracting out of registrar’s functions

(1) Where by virtue of an order made under section 69 of the Deregulation and Contracting Out Act 1994 (c. 40) a person is authorised by the registrar to accept delivery of any class of documents that are under any enactment to be delivered to the registrar, the registrar may direct that documents of that class shall be delivered to a specified address of the authorised person. Any such direction must be printed and made available to the public (with or without payment).

(2) A document of that class that is delivered to an address other than the specified address is treated as not having been delivered.

(3) Registrar’s rules are not subordinate legislation for the purposes of section 71 of the Deregulation and Contracting Out Act 1994 (functions excluded from contracting out).

1086 Application of Part to overseas companies

Unless the context otherwise requires, the provisions of this Part apply to an overseas company as they apply to a company registered under the Companies Acts.
PART 36

OFFENCES UNDER THE COMPANIES ACTS

Liability of officer in default

1087 Liability of officer in default

(1) This section has effect for the purposes of any provision of the Companies Acts to the effect that, in the event of contravention of an enactment in relation to a company, an offence is committed by every officer of the company who is in default.

(2) For this purpose “officer” includes—
   (a) any director, manager or secretary, and
   (b) any person who is to be treated as an officer of the company for the purposes of the provision in question.

(3) An officer is “in default” for the purposes of the provision if he authorises or permits, participates in, or fails to take all reasonable steps to prevent, the contravention.

1088 Liability of company as officer in default

(1) Where a company is an officer of another company, it does not commit an offence as an officer in default unless one of its officers is in default.

(2) Where any such offence is committed by a company the officer in question also commits the offence and is liable to be proceeded against and punished accordingly.

(3) In this section “officer” and “in default” have the meanings given by section 1087.

1089 Application to bodies other than companies

(1) Section 1087 (liability of officers in default) applies to a body other than a company as it applies to a company.

(2) As it applies in relation to a body corporate other than a company —
   (a) the reference to a director of the company shall be read as referring—
      (i) where the body’s affairs are managed by its members, to a member of the body,
      (ii) in any other case, to any corresponding officer of the body, and
   (b) the reference to a manager or secretary of the company shall be read as referring to any manager, secretary or similar officer of the body.

(3) As it applies in relation to a partnership —
   (a) the reference to a director of the company shall be read as referring to a member of the partnership, and
   (b) the reference to a manager or secretary of the company shall be read as referring to any manager, secretary or similar officer of the partnership.

(4) As it applies in relation to an unincorporated body other than a partnership —
   (a) the reference to a director of the company shall be read as referring—
(i) where the body’s affairs are managed by its members, to a member of the body,
(ii) in any other case, to a member of the governing body, and

(b) the reference to a manager or secretary of the company shall be read as referring to any manager, secretary or similar officer of the body.

1090 Amendments of the Companies Act 1985

Schedule 3 contains amendments of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6) relating to offences.

General provisions

1091 Meaning of “daily default fine”

(1) This section defines what is meant in the Companies Acts where it is provided that a person guilty of an offence is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding a specified amount “and in the case of continued contravention to a daily default fine” not exceeding a specified amount.

(2) This means that the person is liable on a second or subsequent summary conviction of the offence to a fine not exceeding the latter amount for each day on which the contravention is continued (instead of being liable to a fine not exceeding the former amount).

1092 Consents required for certain prosecutions

(1) This section applies to proceedings for an offence under any of the following provisions—

section 466, 468 or 916 of this Act (offences of unauthorised disclosure of information);
section 920 of this Act (failure to comply with rules about takeover bid documents);
section 448, 449, 450, 451 or 453A of the Companies Act 1985 (offences in connection with company investigations);
section 455 of that Act (offence of attempting to evade restrictions on shares).

(2) No such proceedings are to be brought in England and Wales except by or with the consent of—

(a) in the case of an offence under—

(i) section 466, 468 or 916 of this Act,
(ii) section 920 of this Act, or
(iii) section 448, 449, 450, 451 or 453A of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6),
the Secretary of State or the Director of Public Prosecutions;

(b) in the case of an offence under section 455 of the Companies Act 1985,
the Secretary of State.

(3) No such proceedings are to be brought in Northern Ireland except by or with the consent of—
(a) in the case of an offence under—
   (i) section 466, 468 or 916 of this Act,
   (ii) section 920 of this Act, or
   (iii) section 448, 449, 450, 451 or 453A of the Companies Act 1985,
         the Secretary of State or the Director of Public Prosecutions for
         Northern Ireland;
(b) in the case of an offence under section 455 of the Companies Act 1985,
    the Secretary of State.

1093 Summary proceedings: venue

(1) Summary proceedings for any offence under the Companies Acts may be
taken—
   (a) against a body corporate, at any place at which the body has a place of
       business, and
   (b) against any other person, at any place at which he is for the time being.

(2) This is without prejudice to any jurisdiction exercisable apart from this section.

1094 Summary proceedings: time limit for proceedings

(1) An information relating to an offence under the Companies Acts that is triable
by a magistrates’ court in England and Wales may be so tried if it is laid—
   (a) at any time within three years after the commission of the offence, and
   (b) within twelve months after the date on which evidence sufficient in the
       opinion of the Director of Public Prosecutions or the Secretary of State
       (as the case may be) to justify the proceedings comes to his knowledge.

(2) Summary proceedings in Scotland for an offence under the Companies Acts—
   (a) must not be commenced after the expiration of three years from the
       commission of the offence;
   (b) subject to that, may be commenced at any time—
       (i) within twelve months after the date on which evidence sufficient in the
           Lord Advocate’s opinion to justify the proceedings came to his knowledge, or
       (ii) where such evidence was reported to him by the Secretary of
           State, within twelve months after the date on which it came to
           the knowledge of the latter.

   Section 136(3) of the Criminal Procedure (Scotland) Act 1995 (c. 46) (date when
   proceedings deemed to be commenced) applies for the purposes of this subsection as
   for the purposes of that section.

(3) A magistrates’ court in Northern Ireland has jurisdiction to hear and determine
a complaint charging the commission of a summary offence under the
Companies Acts provided that the complaint is made—
   (a) within three years from the time when the offence was committed, and
   (b) within twelve months from the date on which evidence sufficient in the
       opinion of the Director of Public Prosecutions for Northern Ireland or
       the Secretary of State (as the case may be) to justify the proceedings
       comes to his knowledge.

(4) For the purposes of this section a certificate of the Director of Public
Prosecutions, the Lord Advocate, the Director of Public Prosecutions for
Northern Ireland or the Secretary of State (as the case may be) as to the date on which such evidence as is referred to above came to his notice is conclusive evidence.

1095 **Legal professional privilege**

In proceedings against a person for an offence under the Companies Acts, nothing in those Acts is to be taken to require any person to disclose any information that he is entitled to refuse to disclose on grounds of legal professional privilege (in Scotland, confidentiality of communications).

1096 **Proceedings against unincorporated bodies**

(1) Proceedings for an offence under the Companies Acts alleged to have been committed by an unincorporated body must be brought in the name of the body (and not in that of any of its members).

(2) For the purposes of such proceedings—

(a) any rules of court relating to the service of documents have effect as if the body were a body corporate, and

(b) the following provisions apply as they apply in relation to a body corporate—

(i) in England and Wales, section 33 of the Criminal Justice Act 1925 (c. 86) and Schedule 3 to the Magistrates’ Courts Act 1980 (c. 43),

(ii) in Scotland, sections 70 and 143 of the Criminal Procedure (Scotland) Act 1995 (c. 46),

(iii) in Northern Ireland, section 18 of the Criminal Justice Act (Northern Ireland) 1945 (c. 15 (N.I.)) and Article 166 of and Schedule 4 to the Magistrates’ Courts (Northern Ireland) Order 1981 (S.I. 1981/1675 (N.I. 26)).

(3) A fine imposed on an unincorporated body on its conviction of an offence under the Companies Acts must be paid out of the funds of the body.

1097 **Imprisonment on summary conviction in England and Wales: transitory provision**

(1) This section applies to any provision of the Companies Acts that provides that a person guilty of an offence is liable on summary conviction in England and Wales to imprisonment for a term not exceeding twelve months.

(2) In relation to an offence committed before the commencement of section 154(1) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (c. 44), for “twelve months” substitute “six months”.

**Production and inspection of documents**

1098 **Production and inspection of documents where offence suspected**

(1) An application under this section may be made—

(a) in England and Wales, to a judge of the High Court by the Director of Public Prosecutions, the Secretary of State or a chief officer of police;
(b) in Scotland, to one of the Lords Commissioners of Justiciary by the Lord Advocate;
(c) in Northern Ireland, to the High Court by the Director of Public Prosecutions for Northern Ireland, the Department of Enterprise, Trade and Investment or a chief superintendent of the Police Service of Northern Ireland.

(2) If on an application under this section there is shown to be reasonable cause to believe—
   (a) that any person has, while an officer of a company, committed an offence in connection with the management of the company’s affairs, and
   (b) that evidence of the commission of the offence is to be found in any documents in the possession or control of the company,

an order under this section may be made.

(3) The order may—
   (a) authorise any person named in it to inspect the documents in question, or any of them, for the purpose of investigating and obtaining evidence of the offence, or
   (b) require the secretary of the company, or such other officer of it as may be named in the order, to produce the documents (or any of them) to a person named in the order at a place so named.

(4) This section applies also in relation to documents in the possession or control of a person carrying on the business of banking, so far as they relate to the company’s affairs, as it applies to documents in the possession or control of the company, except that no such order as is referred to in subsection (3)(b) may be made by virtue of this subsection.

(5) The decision under this section of a judge of the High Court, any of the Lords Commissioners of Justiciary or the High Court is not appealable.

(6) In this section “document” includes information recorded in any form.

Supplementary

1099 Transitional provision

The provisions of this Part except section 1098 do not apply to offences committed before the commencement of the relevant provision.

Part 37

Companies: Supplementary provisions

Company records

1100 Meaning of “company records”

In this Part “company records” means any register, index, accounting records, agreement, memorandum, minutes or other document required by the Companies Acts to be kept by a company.


1101 Form of company records

(1) Company records—
   (a) may be kept in hard copy or electronic form, and
   (b) may be arranged in such manner as the directors of the company think fit,

   provided the information in question is adequately recorded for future reference.

(2) Where the records are kept in electronic form, they must be capable of being reproduced in hard copy form.

(3) If a company fails to comply with this section, an offence is committed by every officer of the company who is in default.

(4) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 3 on the standard scale.

(5) Any provision of an instrument made by a company before 12th February 1979 that requires a register of holders of the company’s debentures to be kept in hard copy form is to be read as requiring it to be kept in hard copy or electronic form.

1102 Regulations about inspection of records and provision of copies

(1) The Secretary of State may make provision by regulations as to the obligations of a company that is required by any provision of the Companies Acts—
   (a) to make available for inspection any company records, or
   (b) to provide copies of any company records.

(2) A company that fails to comply with the regulations is treated as having refused inspection or, as the case may be, having failed to provide a copy.

(3) The regulations may—
   (a) make provision as to the time, duration and manner of inspection, including the circumstances in which and extent to which the copying of information is permitted in the course of inspection, and
   (b) define what may be required of the company as regards the nature, extent and manner of extracting or presenting any information for the purposes of inspection or the provision of copies.

(4) Where there is power to charge a fee, the regulations may make provision as to the amount of the fee and the basis of its calculation.

(5) Nothing in any provision of this Act or in the regulations shall be read as preventing a company—
   (a) from affording more extensive facilities than are required by the regulations, or
   (b) where a fee may be charged, from charging a lesser fee than that prescribed or none at all.

(6) Regulations under this section are subject to negative resolution procedure.
1103 Duty to take precautions against falsification

(1) Where company records are kept otherwise than in bound books, adequate precautions must be taken—
   (a) to guard against falsification, and
   (b) to facilitate the discovery of falsification.

(2) If a company fails to comply with this section, an offence is committed by every officer of the company who is in default.

(3) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 3 on the standard scale.

(4) This section does not apply to the documents required to be kept under—
   (a) section 228 (copy of director’s service contract or memorandum of its terms); or
   (b) section 237 (qualifying indemnity provision).

Service addresses

1104 Service of documents on company

(1) A document may be served on a company registered under the Companies Acts by leaving it at, or sending it by post to, the company’s registered office.

(2) A document may be served on an overseas company whose particulars are registered under section 1012—
   (a) by leaving it at, or sending it by post to, the registered address of any person resident in the United Kingdom who is authorised to accept service of documents on the company’s behalf, or
   (b) if there is no such person, or if any such person refuses service or service cannot for any other reason be effected, by leaving it at or sending by post to any place of business of the company in the United Kingdom.

(3) Where a company registered in Scotland or Northern Ireland carries on business in England and Wales, the process of any court in England and Wales may be served on the company by leaving it at, or sending it by post to, the company’s principal place of business in England and Wales, addressed to the manager or other head officer in England and Wales of the company.
Where process is served on a company under this subsection, the person issuing out the process must send a copy of it by post to the company’s registered office.

1105 Service of documents on directors, secretaries and others

(1) A document may be served on a person to whom this section applies by leaving it at, or sending it by post to, the person’s registered address.

(2) This section applies to—
   (a) a director or secretary of a company;
   (b) in the case of an overseas company whose particulars are registered under section 1012, a person holding any such position as may be
specified for the purposes of this section by regulations under that section;
(c) a person appointed in relation to a company as—
  (i) a judicial factor (in Scotland),
  (ii) a receiver and manager appointed under section 18 of the Charities Act 1993 (c. 10), or
  (iii) a manager appointed under section 47 of the Companies (Audit, Investigations and Community Enterprise) Act 2004 (c. 27).

(3) This section applies whatever the purpose of the document in question. It is not restricted to service for purposes arising out of or in connection with the appointment or position mentioned in subsection (2) or in connection with the company concerned.

(4) For the purposes of this section a person’s “registered address” means any address for the time being shown as a current address in relation to that person in the part of the register available for public inspection.

(5) If notice of a change of that address is given to the registrar, a person may validly serve a document at the address previously registered until the end of the period of 14 days beginning with the date on which notice of the change is registered.

(6) Service may not be effected by virtue of this section at an address—
  (a) if notice has been registered of the termination of the appointment in relation to which the address was registered and the address is not a registered address of the person concerned in relation to any other appointment;
  (b) in the case of a person holding any such position as is mentioned in subsection (2)(b), if the overseas company has ceased to have any connection with the United Kingdom by virtue of which it is required to register particulars under section 1012.

(7) Nothing in this section shall be read as affecting any enactment or rule of law under which permission is required for service out of the jurisdiction.

1106 Service addresses
(1) In the Companies Acts a “service address”, in relation to a person, means an address at which documents may be effectively served on that person.

(2) The Secretary of State may by regulations specify conditions with which a service address must comply.

(3) Regulations under this section are subject to negative resolution procedure.

1107 Requirement to give service address
Any obligation under the Companies Acts to give a person’s address is, unless otherwise expressly provided, to give a service address for that person.
Sending or supplying documents or information

1108 The company communications provisions

(1) The provisions of sections 1109 to 1114 ("the company communications provisions") have effect for the purposes of any provision of the Companies Acts that authorises or requires documents or information to be sent or supplied by or to a company.

(2) As regards documents or information to be sent or supplied to the registrar the company communications provisions have effect subject to the provisions of Part 35.

1109 Sending or supplying documents or information

(1) Documents or information to be sent or supplied to a company must be sent or supplied in accordance with the provisions of Schedule 4.

(2) Documents or information to be sent or supplied by a company must be sent or supplied—
   (a) in the case of a company other than a traded company, in accordance with the provisions of Schedule 5;
   (b) in the case of a traded company, in accordance with the provisions of Schedule 6.

(3) The provisions referred to in subsection (2) apply (and those referred to in subsection (1) do not apply) in relation to documents or information that are to be sent or supplied by one company to another.

1110 Construction of provisions about documents or information sent or supplied

(1) A provision that requires a document or information to be sent or supplied in hard copy form, and does not authorise its being sent or supplied in electronic form, is not complied with by sending or supplying it by electronic means.

(2) A provision that authorises documents or information to be sent or supplied in hard copy form, in electronic form or by means of a website only authorises them to be sent or supplied in accordance with the company communications provisions (unless it expressly states otherwise).

(3) A requirement to send or supply documents or information in hard copy form, in electronic form or by means of a website is a requirement to send or supply them in accordance with the company communications provisions (unless it expressly states otherwise).

1111 Right to hard copy version

(1) Where a member of a company or a holder of a company’s debentures has received a document or information from the company otherwise than in hard copy form, he is entitled to require the company to send him a version of the document or information in hard copy form.

(2) The company must send the document or information in hard copy form within 21 days of receipt of the request from the member or debenture holder.
(3) The company may not make a charge for providing the document or information in that form.

(4) If a company fails to comply with this section, an offence is committed by the company and every officer of it who is in default.

(5) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 3 on the standard scale.

(6) This section has effect subject to any contrary provision in an enactment.

1112 Requirement of authentication

(1) This section applies in relation to the authentication of a document or information sent or supplied by a person to a company.

(2) A document or information sent or supplied in hard copy form is sufficiently authenticated if it is signed by the person sending or supplying it.

(3) A document or information sent or supplied in electronic form is sufficiently authenticated—
   (a) if the identity of the sender is confirmed in a manner specified by the company, or
   (b) where no such manner has been specified by the company, if the communication contains or is accompanied by a statement of the identity of the sender and the company has no reason to doubt the truth of that statement.

(4) Where a document or information is sent or supplied by one person on behalf of another, nothing in this section affects any provision of the company’s articles under which the company may require reasonable evidence of the authority of the former to act on behalf of the latter.

1113 Deemed delivery of documents and information

(1) This section applies in relation to documents and information sent or supplied by a company.

(2) Where—
   (a) the document or information is sent by post (whether in hard copy or electronic form) to an address in the United Kingdom, and
   (b) the company is able to show that it was properly addressed, prepaid and posted,
   it is deemed to have been received by the intended recipient 48 hours after it was posted.

(3) Where—
   (a) the document or information is sent or supplied by electronic means, and
   (b) the company is able to show that it was properly addressed,
   it is deemed to have been received by the intended recipient 48 hours after it was sent.
(4) Where the document or information is sent or supplied by means of a website, it is deemed to have been received by the intended recipient—
   (a) when the material was first made available on the website, or
   (b) if later, when the recipient received (or is deemed to have received) notice of the fact that the material was available on the website.

(5) In calculating a period of hours for the purposes of this section, no account shall be taken of any part of a day that is not a working day.

(6) This section has effect subject to—
   (a) any contrary provision of the Companies Acts;
   (b) in its application to documents or information sent or supplied by a company to its members, any contrary provision of the company’s articles;
   (c) in its application to documents or information sent or supplied by a company to its debentures holders, any contrary provision in the instrument constituting the debentures;
   (d) in its application to documents or information sent or supplied by a company to a person otherwise than in his capacity as a member or debenture holder, any contrary provision in an agreement between the company and that person.

1114 Interpretation of company communications provisions

(1) In the company communications provisions—
   “address” includes a number or address used for the purposes of sending or receiving documents or information by electronic means;
   “document” includes summons, notice, order or other legal process and registers;
   “traded company” means a company whose securities are admitted to trading on a regulated market.

(2) References in the company communications provisions to provisions of the Companies Acts authorising or requiring a document or information to be sent or supplied include all such provisions, whatever expression is used, and references to documents or information being sent or supplied shall be construed accordingly.

(3) References in the company communications provisions to documents or information being sent or supplied by or to a company include references to documents or information being sent or supplied by or to the directors of a company acting on behalf of the company.

Requirements as to independent valuation

1115 Application of valuation requirements

The provisions of sections 1116 to 1119 apply to the valuation and report required by—
   section 93 (re-registration as public company: valuation of recently transferred non-cash asset);
   section 607 (allotment of shares of public company in consideration of non-cash asset);
   section 612 (transfer of non-cash asset to public company).
1116 Valuation by qualified independent person

(1) The valuation and report must be made by a person (“the valuer”) who—
   (a) is eligible for appointment as a statutory auditor (see section 1176), and
   (b) meets the independence requirement in section 1117.

(2) However, where it appears to the valuer to be reasonable for the valuation of the consideration, or part of it, to be made by (or for him to accept a valuation made by) another person who—
   (a) appears to him to have the requisite knowledge and experience to value the consideration or that part of it, and
   (b) is not an officer or employee of—
      (i) the company, or
      (ii) any other body corporate that is that company’s subsidiary or holding company or a subsidiary of that company’s holding company,
      or a partner of or employed by any such officer or employee,
   he may arrange for or accept such a valuation, together with a report which will enable him to make his own report under this section.

(3) The references in subsection (2)(b) to an officer or employee do not include an auditor.

(4) Where the consideration or part of it is valued by a person other than the valuer himself, the latter’s report must state that fact and shall also—
   (a) state the former’s name and what knowledge and experience he has to carry out the valuation, and
   (b) describe so much of the consideration as was valued by the other person, and the method used to value it, and specify the date of that valuation.

1117 The independence requirement

(1) A person meets the independence requirement for the purposes of section 1116 only if—
   (a) he is not—
      (i) an officer or employee of the company, or
      (ii) a partner or employee of such a person, or a partnership of which such a person is a partner;
   (b) he is not—
      (i) an officer or employee of an associated undertaking of the company, or
      (ii) a partner or employee of such a person, or a partnership of which such a person is a partner; and
   (c) there does not exist between—
      (i) the person or an associate of his, and
      (ii) the company or an associated undertaking of the company, a connection of any such description as may be specified by regulations made by the Secretary of State.

(2) An auditor of the company is not regarded as an officer or employee of the company for this purpose.

(3) In this section—
“associated undertaking” means—
(a) a parent undertaking or subsidiary undertaking of the company, or
(b) a subsidiary undertaking of a parent undertaking of the company; and

“associate” has the meaning given by section 1118.

(4) Regulations under this section are subject to negative resolution procedure.

1118 Meaning of “associate”

(1) This section defines “associate” for the purposes of section 1117 (valuation: independence requirement).

(2) In relation to an individual, “associate” means—
(a) that individual’s spouse or civil partner or minor child or step-child,
(b) any body corporate of which that individual is a director, and
(c) any employee or partner of that individual.

(3) In relation to a body corporate, “associate” means—
(a) any body corporate of which that body is a director,
(b) any body corporate in the same group as that body, and
(c) any employee or partner of that body or of any body corporate in the same group.

(4) In relation to a partnership that is a legal person under the law by which it is governed, “associate” means—
(a) any body corporate of which that partnership is a director,
(b) any employee of or partner in that partnership, and
(c) any person who is an associate of a partner in that partnership.

(5) In relation to a partnership that is not a legal person under the law by which it is governed, “associate” means any person who is an associate of any of the partners.

(6) In this section, in relation to a limited liability partnership, for “director” read “member”.

1119 Valuer entitled to full disclosure

(1) A person carrying out a valuation or making a report with respect to any consideration proposed to be accepted or given by a company, is entitled to require from the officers of the company such information and explanation as he thinks necessary to enable him to—
(a) carry out the valuation or make the report, and
(b) provide any note required by section 610(3) or 614(3) (note required where valuation carried out by another person).

(2) A person who knowingly or recklessly makes a statement to which this subsection applies that is misleading, false or deceptive in a material particular commits an offence.

(3) Subsection (2) applies to a statement—
(a) made (whether orally or in writing) to a person carrying out a valuation or making a report, and
(4) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (2) is liable—
(a) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or a fine (or both);
(b) on summary conviction—
   (i) in England and Wales, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding twelve months or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both);
   (ii) in Scotland or Northern Ireland, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months, or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both).

Notice of appointment of certain officers

1120 Duty to notify registrar of certain appointments etc

(1) Notice must be given to the registrar of the appointment in relation to a company of—
   (a) a judicial factor (in Scotland),
   (b) a receiver and manager appointed under section 18 of the Charities Act 1993 (c. 10), or
   (c) a manager appointed under section 47 of the Companies (Audit, Investigations and Community Enterprise) Act 2004 (c. 27).

(2) The notice must be given—
   (a) in the case of appointment of a judicial factor, by the judicial factor;
   (b) in the case of appointment of a receiver and manager under section 18 of the Charities Act 1993, by the Charity Commission;
   (c) in the case of appointment of a manager under section 47 of the Companies (Audit, Investigations and Community Enterprise) Act 2004, by the Regulator of Community Interest Companies.

(3) The notice must specify an address at which service of documents (including legal process) may be effected on the person appointed.

Notice of a change in the address for service may be given to the registrar by the person appointed.

(4) Where notice has been given under this section of the appointment of a person, notice must also be given to the registrar of the termination of the appointment. This notice must be given by the person specified in subsection (2).

1121 Offence of failure to give notice

(1) If a judicial factor fails to give notice of his appointment in accordance with section 1120 within the period of 14 days after the appointment he commits an offence.

(2) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 5 on the standard scale.
1122 Meaning of “the court”

(1) Except as otherwise provided, in the Companies Acts “the court” means—
   (a) in England and Wales, the High Court or (subject to subsection (3)) a county court;
   (b) in Scotland, the Court of Session or the sheriff court;
   (c) in Northern Ireland, the High Court.

(2) The provisions of the Companies Acts conferring jurisdiction on “the court” as defined above have effect subject to any enactment or rule of law relating to the allocation of jurisdiction or distribution of business between courts in any part of the United Kingdom.

(3) The Lord Chancellor may, with the concurrence of the Lord Chief Justice, by order—
   (a) exclude a county court from having jurisdiction under the Companies Acts, and
   (b) for the purposes of that jurisdiction attach that court’s district, or any part of it, to another county court.

(4) The Lord Chief Justice may nominate a judicial office holder (as defined in section 109(4) of the Constitutional Reform Act 2005 (c. 4)) to exercise his functions under subsection (3).

1123 Power of court to grant relief in certain cases

(1) If in proceedings for negligence, default, breach of duty or breach of trust against—
   (a) an officer of a company, or
   (b) a person employed by a company as auditor (whether he is or is not an officer of the company),
   it appears to the court hearing the case that the officer or person is or may be liable but that he acted honestly and reasonably, and that having regard to all the circumstances of the case (including those connected with his appointment) he ought fairly to be excused, the court may relieve him, either wholly or in part, from his liability on such terms as it thinks fit.

(2) If any such officer or person has reason to apprehend that a claim will or might be made against him in respect of negligence, default, breach of duty or breach of trust—
   (a) he may apply to the court for relief, and
   (b) the court has the same power to relieve him as it would have had if it had been a court before which proceedings against him for negligence, default, breach of duty or breach of trust had been brought.

(3) Where the directors of a company take advantage of the exemption conferred by section 490 (small charities: independent examiner’s report in lieu of audit) this section, as it has effect in England and Wales and Northern Ireland, applies in relation to a person appointed as independent examiner as it applies in relation to a person appointed to act as auditor.

(4) Where a case to which subsection (1) applies is being tried by a judge with a jury, the judge, after hearing the evidence, may, if he is satisfied that the
defendant (in Scotland, the defender) ought in pursuance of that subsection to be relieved either in whole or in part from the liability sought to be enforced against him, withdraw the case from the jury and forthwith direct judgment to be entered for the defendant (in Scotland, grant decree of absolvitor) on such terms as to costs (in Scotland, expenses) or otherwise as the judge may think proper.

PART 38

COMPANIES: INTERPRETATION

Meaning of "subsidiary" and related expressions

1124 Meaning of “subsidiary” etc

(1) A company is a “subsidiary” of another company, its “holding company”, if that other company—
   (a) hold a majority of the voting rights in it, or
   (b) is a member of it and has the right to appoint or remove a majority of its board of directors, or
   (c) is a member of it and controls alone, pursuant to an agreement with other members, a majority of the voting rights in it, or if it is a subsidiary of a company that is itself a subsidiary of that other company.

(2) A company is a “wholly-owned subsidiary” of another company if it has no members except that other and that other’s wholly-owned subsidiaries or persons acting on behalf of that other or its wholly-owned subsidiaries.

(3) Schedule 7 contains provisions explaining expressions used in this section and otherwise supplementing this section.

(4) In this section and that Schedule “company” includes any body corporate.

1125 Meaning of “subsidiary” etc: power to amend

(1) The Secretary of State may by regulations amend the provisions of section 1124 (meaning of “subsidiary” etc) and Schedule 7 (meaning of “subsidiary” etc: supplementary provisions) so as to alter the meaning of the expressions “subsidiary”, “holding company” or “wholly-owned subsidiary”.

(2) Regulations under this section are subject to negative resolution procedure.

(3) Any amendment made by regulations under this section does not apply for the purposes of enactments outside the Companies Acts unless the regulations so provide.

(4) So much of section 23(3) of the Interpretation Act 1978 (c. 30) as applies section 17(2)(a) of that Act (effect of repeal and re-enactment) to deeds, instruments and documents other than enactments does not apply in relation to any repeal and re-enactment effected by regulations under this section.
1126 Meaning of “undertaking” and related expressions

(1) In the Companies Acts “undertaking” means—
   (a) a body corporate or partnership, or
   (b) an unincorporated association carrying on a trade or business, with or without a view to profit.

(2) In the Companies Acts references to shares—
   (a) in relation to an undertaking with capital but no share capital, are to rights to share in the capital of the undertaking; and
   (b) in relation to an undertaking without capital, are to interests—
      (i) conferring any right to share in the profits or liability to contribute to the losses of the undertaking, or
      (ii) giving rise to an obligation to contribute to the debts or expenses of the undertaking in the event of a winding up.

(3) Other expressions appropriate to companies shall be construed, in relation to an undertaking which is not a company, as references to the corresponding persons, officers, documents or organs, as the case may be, appropriate to undertakings of that description.

This is subject to provision in any specific context providing for the translation of such expressions.

(4) References in the Companies Acts to “fellow subsidiary undertakings” are to undertakings which are subsidiary undertakings of the same parent undertaking but are not parent undertakings or subsidiary undertakings of each other.

(5) In the Companies Acts “group undertaking”, in relation to an undertaking, means an undertaking which is—
   (a) a parent undertaking or subsidiary undertaking of that undertaking, or
   (b) a subsidiary undertaking of any parent undertaking of that undertaking.

1127 Parent and subsidiary undertakings

(1) This section (together with Schedule 8) defines “parent undertaking” and “subsidiary undertaking” for the purposes of the Companies Acts.

(2) An undertaking is a parent undertaking in relation to another undertaking, a subsidiary undertaking, if—
   (a) it holds a majority of the voting rights in the undertaking, or
   (b) it is a member of the undertaking and has the right to appoint or remove a majority of its board of directors, or
   (c) it has the right to exercise a dominant influence over the undertaking—
      (i) by virtue of provisions contained in the undertaking’s articles, or
      (ii) by virtue of a control contract, or
   (d) it is a member of the undertaking and controls alone, pursuant to an agreement with other shareholders or members, a majority of the voting rights in the undertaking.
(3) For the purposes of subsection (2) an undertaking shall be treated as a member of another undertaking—
   (a) if any of its subsidiary undertakings is a member of that undertaking, or
   (b) if any shares in that other undertaking are held by a person acting on behalf of the undertaking or any of its subsidiary undertakings.

(4) An undertaking is also a parent undertaking in relation to another undertaking, a subsidiary undertaking, if—
   (a) it has the power to exercise, or actually exercises, dominant influence or control over it, or
   (b) it and the subsidiary undertaking are managed on a unified basis.

(5) A parent undertaking shall be treated as the parent undertaking of undertakings in relation to which any of its subsidiary undertakings are, or are to be treated as, parent undertakings; and references to its subsidiary undertakings shall be construed accordingly.

(6) Schedule 8 contains provisions explaining expressions used in this section and otherwise supplementing this section.

(7) In this section and that Schedule references to shares, in relation to an undertaking, are to allotted shares.

Other definitions

1128 Meaning of “banking company” and “banking group”

(1) This section defines “banking company” and “banking group” for the purposes of the Companies Acts.

(2) “Banking company” means a person who has permission under Part 4 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (c. 8) to accept deposits, other than—
   (a) a person who is not a company, and
   (b) a person who has such permission only for the purpose of carrying on another regulated activity in accordance with permission under that Part.

(3) The definition in subsection (2) must be read with section 22 of that Act, any relevant order under that section and Schedule 2 to that Act.

(4) References to a banking group are to a group where the parent company is a banking company or where—
   (a) the parent company’s principal subsidiary undertakings are wholly or mainly credit institutions, and
   (b) the parent company does not itself carry on any material business apart from the acquisition, management and disposal of interests in subsidiary undertakings.

“Group” here means a parent undertaking and its subsidiary undertakings.

(5) For the purposes of subsection (4)—
   (a) a parent company’s principal subsidiary undertakings are the subsidiary undertakings of the company whose results or financial position would principally affect the figures shown in the group accounts, and
(b) the management of interests in subsidiary undertakings includes the provision of services to such undertakings.

1129 Meaning of “insurance company” and related expressions

(1) This section defines “insurance company”, “authorised insurance company”, “insurance group” and “insurance market activity” for the purposes of the Companies Acts.

(2) An “authorised insurance company” means a person (whether incorporated or not) who has permission under Part 4 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (c. 8) to effect or carry out contracts of insurance.

(3) An “insurance company” means—

(a) an authorised insurance company, or
(b) any other person (whether incorporated or not) who—
   (i) carries on insurance market activity, or
   (ii) may effect or carry out contracts of insurance under which the benefits provided by that person are exclusively or primarily benefits in kind in the event of accident to or breakdown of a vehicle.

(4) Neither expression includes a friendly society within the meaning of the Friendly Societies Act 1992 (c. 40).

(5) References to an insurance group are to a group where the parent company is an insurance company or where—

(a) the parent company’s principal subsidiary undertakings are wholly or mainly insurance companies, and

(b) the parent company does not itself carry on any material business apart from the acquisition, management and disposal of interests in subsidiary undertakings.

“Group” here means a parent undertaking and its subsidiary undertakings.

(6) For the purposes of subsection (5)—

(a) a parent company’s principal subsidiary undertakings are the subsidiary undertakings of the company whose results or financial position would principally affect the figures shown in the group accounts, and

(b) the management of interests in subsidiary undertakings includes the provision of services to such undertakings.

(7) “Insurance market activity” has the meaning given in section 316(3) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (c. 8).

(8) References in this section to contracts of insurance and to the effecting or carrying out of such contracts must be read with section 22 of that Act, any relevant order under that section and Schedule 2 to that Act.

1130 “Employees’ share scheme”

For the purposes of the Companies Acts an employees’ share scheme is a scheme for encouraging or facilitating the holding of shares in or debentures of a company by or for the benefit of—

(a) the bona fide employees or former employees of—
(i) the company,
(ii) any subsidiary of the company, or
(iii) the company’s holding company or any subsidiary of the company’s holding company, or
(b) the spouses, civil partners, surviving spouses, surviving civil partners, or minor children or step-children of such employees or former employees.

1131 Meaning of “prescribed”

In the Companies Acts “prescribed” means prescribed (by order or by regulations) by the Secretary of State.

1132 Hard copy and electronic form and related expressions

(1) The following provisions apply for the purposes of the Companies Acts.

(2) A document or information is sent or supplied in hard copy form if it is sent or supplied in a paper copy or similar form capable of being read. References to hard copy have a corresponding meaning.

(3) A document or information is sent or supplied in electronic form if it is sent or supplied—
   (a) by electronic means (for example, by e-mail or fax), or
   (b) by any other means while in an electronic form (for example, sending a disk by post).

References to electronic copy have a corresponding meaning.

(4) A document or information is sent or supplied by electronic means if it is—
   (a) sent initially and received at its destination by means of electronic equipment for the processing (which expression includes digital compression) or storage of data; and
   (b) entirely transmitted, conveyed and received by wire, by radio, by optical means or by other electromagnetic means.

References to electronic means have a corresponding meaning.

(5) A document or information authorised or required to be sent or supplied in electronic form must be sent or supplied in a form, and by a means, that the sender or supplier reasonably considers will enable the recipient—
   (a) to read it, and
   (b) to retain a copy of it.

(6) For the purposes of this section, a document or information can be read only if—
   (a) it can be read with the naked eye, or
   (b) to the extent that it consists of images (for example photographs, pictures, maps, plans or drawings), it can be seen with the naked eye.

(7) The provisions of this section apply whether the provision of the Companies Acts in question uses the words “sent” or “supplied” or uses other words (such as “deliver”, “provide”, “produce” or, in the case of a notice, “give”) to refer to the sending or supplying of a document or information.
1133 Classes of shares

(1) For the purpose of the Companies Acts shares are of one class if the rights attached to them are in all respects uniform.

(2) For this purpose the rights attached to shares are not regarded as different from those attached to other shares by reason only that they do not carry the same rights to dividends in the twelve months immediately following their allotment.

1134 Dormant companies

(1) For the purposes of the Companies Acts a company is “dormant” during any period in which it has no significant accounting transaction.

(2) A “significant accounting transaction” means a transaction that is required by section 392 to be entered in the company’s accounting records.

(3) In determining whether or when a company is dormant, there shall be disregarded—

(a) any transaction arising from the taking of shares in the company by a subscriber to the memorandum as a result of an undertaking of his in connection with the formation of the company;

(b) any transaction consisting of the payment of—

(i) a fee to the registrar on a change of the company’s name,
(ii) a fee to the registrar on the re-registration of the company,
(iii) a penalty under section 461 (penalty for failure to file accounts), or
(iv) a fee to the registrar for the registration of an annual return.

(4) Any reference in the Companies Acts to a body corporate other than a company being dormant has a corresponding meaning.

1135 Meaning of “EEA State” and related expressions

In the Companies Acts—

“EEA State” means a state which is a Contracting Party to the Agreement on the European Economic Area signed at Oporto on 2nd May 1992 (as it has effect from time to time);

“EEA company” and “EEA undertaking” mean a company or undertaking governed by the law of an EEA State.

1136 The former Companies Acts

In the Companies Acts—

“the former Companies Acts” means—

(a) the Joint Stock Companies Acts, the Companies Act 1862 (c. 89), the Companies (Consolidation) Act 1908 (c. 69), the Companies Act 1929 (c. 23), the Companies Act (Northern Ireland) 1932 (c. 7 (N.I.)), the Companies Acts 1948 to 1983, the Companies Act (Northern Ireland) 1960 (c. 22 (N.I.)), the Companies (Northern Ireland) Order 1986 (S.I. 1986/1032 (N.I. 6)) and the Companies Consolidation (Consequential Provisions) (Northern Ireland) Order 1986 (S.I. 1986/1035 (N.I. 9)), and
(b) the provisions of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6) and the Companies Consolidation (Consequential Provisions) Act 1985 (c. 9) that are no longer in force;

“the Joint Stock Companies Acts” means the Joint Stock Companies Act 1856 (c. 47), the Joint Stock Companies Acts 1856, 1857 (20 & 21 Vict. c. 14), the Joint Stock Banking Companies Act 1857 (c. 49), and the Act to enable Joint Stock Banking Companies to be formed on the principle of limited liability (1858 c. 91), but does not include the Joint Stock Companies Act 1844 (c. 110).

1137 References to requirements of this Act

References in the company law provisions of this Act to the requirements of this Act include the requirements of regulations and orders made under it.

1138 Minor definitions: general

(1) In the Companies Acts—

“body corporate” and “corporation” include a body incorporated outside the United Kingdom, but do not include—

(a) a corporation sole, or

(b) a partnership that is not regarded as a legal person under the law by which it is governed;

“credit institution” means a credit institution as defined in Article 1(1)(a) of Directive 2000/12/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council of 20 March 2000 relating to the taking up and pursuit of the business of credit institutions, that is to say an undertaking whose business is to receive deposits or other repayable funds from the public and to grant credits for its own account;

“financial institution” means a financial institution within the meaning of Article 1(1) of the Council Directive on the obligations of branches established in a Member State of credit and financial institutions having their head offices outside that Member State regarding the publication of annual accounting documents (the Bank Branches Directive, 89/117/EEC);

“firm” means any entity, whether or not a legal person, that is not an individual and includes a body corporate, a corporation sole and a partnership or other unincorporated association;

“the Gazette” means—

(a) as respects companies registered in England and Wales, the London Gazette,

(b) as respects companies registered in Scotland, the Edinburgh Gazette, and

(c) as respects companies registered in Northern Ireland, the Belfast Gazette;

“parent company” means a company that is a parent undertaking (see section 1127 and Schedule 8);

“regulated market” has the same meaning as in Directive 2004/39/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council on markets in financial instruments (see Article 4.1(14));
“working day”, in relation to a company, means a day that is not a Saturday or Sunday, Christmas Day, Good Friday or any day that is a bank holiday in the part of the United Kingdom where the company is registered.

(2) Until such date as may be appointed by order under section 1264(2) for the definition in subsection (1) of “regulated market” to come into force, the following definition has effect for the purposes of the Companies Acts—

“regulated market” has the same meaning as it has in Council Directive 93/22/EEC on investment services in the securities field.

1139 Index of defined expressions

(1) Schedule 9 contains an index of provisions defining or otherwise explaining expressions used in the Companies Acts.

(2) For section 744A of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6) substitute—

“744A Index of defined expressions

For an index which includes entries for provisions defining or otherwise explaining expressions used in this Act, see Schedule 9 to the Company Law Reform Act 2006.”.

(3) At the end of section 63(2) of the Companies (Audit, Investigations and Community Enterprise) Act 2004 (c. 27) (interpretation) insert—

“For an index which includes entries for provisions defining or otherwise explaining expressions used in that Act, see Schedule 9 to the Company Law Reform Act 2006.”.

PART 39

COMPANIES: MINOR AMENDMENTS

1140 Power of Secretary of State to bring civil proceedings on company’s behalf

(1) Section 438 of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6) (power of Secretary of State to bring civil proceedings on company’s behalf) shall cease to have effect.

(2) In section 439 of that Act (expenses of investigating company’s affairs)—

(a) in subsection (2) omit “, or is ordered to pay the whole or any part of the costs of proceedings brought under section 438”;

(b) omit subsections (3) and (7) (which relate to section 438);

(c) in subsection (8)—

(i) for “subsections (2) and (3)” substitute “subsection (2)”, and

(ii) omit “; and any such liability imposed by subsection (2) is (subject as mentioned above) a liability also to indemnify all persons against liability under subsection (3)”.

(3) In section 453(1A) of that Act (investigation of overseas companies: provisions not applicable), omit paragraph (b) (which relates to section 438).

(4) Nothing in this section affects proceedings brought under section 438 before the commencement of this section.
1141 Repeal of certain provisions about company directors

The following provisions of Part 10 of the Companies Act 1985 shall cease to have effect—
section 311 (prohibition on tax-free payments to directors);
sections 323 and 327 (prohibition on directors dealing in share options);
sections 324 to 326 and 328 to 329, and Parts 2 to 4 of Schedule 13 (register of directors’ interests);
sections 343 and 344 (special procedure for disclosure by banks).

1142 Repeal of requirement that certain companies publish periodical statement

The following provisions shall cease to have effect—
section 720 of the Companies Act 1985 (certain companies to publish periodical statement), and
Schedule 23 to that Act (form of statement under section 720).

1143 Repeal of requirement that Secretary of State prepare annual report

Section 729 of the Companies Act 1985 (annual report to Parliament by Secretary of State on matters within the Companies Acts) shall cease to have effect.

1144 Repeal of certain provisions about company charges

Part 4 of the Companies Act 1989 (c. 40) (registration of company charges), which has not been brought into force, is repealed.

1145 Access to constitutional documents of RTE and RTM companies

(1) The Secretary of State may by order—
(a) amend Chapter 1 of Part 1 of the Leasehold Reform, Housing and Urban Development Act 1993 (c. 28) for the purpose of facilitating access to the provisions of the articles or any other constitutional document of RTE companies;
(b) amend Chapter 1 of Part 2 of the Commonhold and Leasehold Reform Act 2002 (c. 15) (leasehold reform) for the purpose of facilitating access to the provisions of the articles or any other constitutional document of RTM companies.

(2) References in subsection (1) to provisions of a company’s articles or any other constitutional document include any provisions included in those documents by virtue of any enactment.

(3) An order under this section is subject to negative resolution procedure.

(4) In this section—
“RTE companies” has the same meaning as in Chapter 1 of Part 1 of the Leasehold Reform, Housing and Urban Development Act 1993;
“RTM companies” has the same meaning as in Chapter 1 of Part 2 of the Commonhold and Leasehold Reform Act 2002.
PART 40

COMPANY DIRECTORS: FOREIGN DISQUALIFICATION ETC

Introductory

1146 Persons subject to foreign restrictions

(1) This section defines what is meant by references in this Part to a person being subject to foreign restrictions.

(2) A person is subject to foreign restrictions if under the law of a country or territory outside the United Kingdom—

(a) he is, by reason of misconduct or unfitness, disqualified to any extent from acting in connection with the affairs of a company,

(b) he is, by reason of misconduct or unfitness, required—

(i) to obtain permission from a court or other authority, or

(ii) to meet any other condition,

before acting in connection with the affairs of a company,

(c) he has, by reason of misconduct or unfitness, given undertakings to a court or other authority of a country or territory outside the United Kingdom—

(i) not to act in connection with the affairs of a company, or

(ii) restricting the extent to which, or the way in which, he may do so.

(3) The references in subsection (2) to acting in connection with the affairs of a company are to doing any of the following—

(a) being a director of a company,

(b) acting as receiver of a company’s property, or

(c) being concerned or taking part in the promotion, formation or management of a company.

(4) In this section—

(a) “company” means a company incorporated or formed under the law of the country or territory in question, and

(b) in relation to such a company—

“director” means the holder of an office corresponding to that of director of a UK company; and

“receiver” includes any corresponding officer under the law of that country or territory.

1147 Meaning of “the court” and “UK company”

In this Part—

“the court” means—

(a) in England and Wales, the High Court or a county court;

(b) in Scotland, the Court of Session or the sheriff court;

(c) in Northern Ireland, the High Court;

“UK company” means a body corporate that—

(a) is a company as defined in section 1 of this Act, or
Power to disqualify

1148 Disqualification of persons subject to foreign restrictions

(1) The Secretary of State may make provision by regulations disqualifying a person subject to foreign restrictions from—
   (a) being a director of a UK company,
   (b) acting as receiver of a UK company’s property, or
   (c) in any way, whether directly or indirectly, being concerned or taking part in the promotion, formation or management of a UK company.

(2) The regulations may provide that a person subject to foreign restrictions—
   (a) is disqualified automatically by virtue of the regulations, or
   (b) may be disqualified by order of the court on the application of the Secretary of State.

(3) The regulations may provide that the Secretary of State may accept an undertaking (a “disqualification undertaking”) from a person subject to foreign restrictions that he will not do anything which would be in breach of a disqualification under subsection (1).

(4) In this Part—
   (a) a “person disqualified under this Part” is a person—
      (i) disqualified as mentioned in subsection (2)(a) or (b), or
      (ii) who has given and is subject to a disqualification undertaking;
   (b) references to a breach of a disqualification include a breach of a disqualification undertaking.

(5) The regulations may provide for applications to the court by persons disqualified under this Part for permission to act in a way which would otherwise be in breach of the disqualification.

(6) The regulations must provide that a person ceases to be disqualified under this Part on his ceasing to be subject to foreign restrictions.

(7) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

1149 Disqualification regulations: supplementary

(1) Regulations under section 1148 may make different provision for different cases and may in particular distinguish between cases by reference to—
   (a) the conduct on the basis of which the person became subject to foreign restrictions;
   (b) the nature of the foreign restrictions;
   (c) the country or territory under whose law the foreign restrictions were imposed.

(2) Regulations under section 1148(2)(b) or (5) (provision for applications to the court)—
   (a) must specify the grounds on which an application may be made;
(b) may specify factors to which the court shall have regard in determining an application.

(3) The regulations may, in particular, require the court to have regard to the following factors—

(a) whether the conduct on the basis of which the person became subject to foreign restrictions would, if done in relation to a UK company, have led a court to make a disqualification order on an application under the Company Directors Disqualification Act 1986 (c. 46) or the Company Directors Disqualification (Northern Ireland) Order 2002 (S.I. 2002/3150 (N.I. 4));

(b) in a case in which the conduct on the basis of which the person became subject to foreign restrictions would not be unlawful if done in relation to a UK company, the fact that the person acted unlawfully under foreign law;

(c) whether the person’s activities in relation to UK companies began after he became subject to foreign restrictions;

(d) whether the person’s activities (or proposed activities) in relation to UK companies are undertaken (or are proposed to be undertaken) outside the United Kingdom.

(4) Regulations under section 1148(3) (provision as to undertakings given to the Secretary of State) may include provision allowing the Secretary of State, in determining whether to accept an undertaking, to take into account matters other than criminal convictions notwithstanding that the person may be criminally liable in respect of those matters.

(5) Regulations under section 1148(5) (provision for application to court for permission to act) may include provision—

(a) entitling the Secretary of State to be represented at the hearing of the application, and

(b) as to the giving of evidence or the calling of witnesses by the Secretary of State at the hearing of the application.

1150 Offence of breach of disqualification

(1) Regulations under section 1148 may provide that a person disqualified under this Part who acts in breach of the disqualification commits an offence.

(2) The regulations may provide that a person guilty of such an offence is liable—

(a) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or a fine (or both);

(b) on summary conviction—

(i) in England and Wales, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding twelve months or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both);

(ii) in Scotland or Northern Ireland, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months, or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both).

(3) In relation to an offence committed before the commencement of section 154(1) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (c. 44), for “twelve months” in subsection (2)(b)(i) substitute “six months”.
Part 40 — Company directors: foreign disqualification etc

Power to make persons liable for company’s debts

1151 Personal liability for debts of company

(1) The Secretary of State may provide by regulations that a person who, at a time when he is subject to foreign restrictions—
   (a) is a director of a UK company, or
   (b) is involved in the management of a UK company,
   is personally responsible for all debts and other liabilities of the company incurred during that time.

(2) A person who is personally responsible by virtue of this section for debts and other liabilities of a company is jointly and severally liable in respect of those debts and liabilities with—
   (a) the company, and
   (b) any other person who (whether by virtue of this section or otherwise) is so liable.

(3) For the purposes of this section a person is involved in the management of a company if he is concerned, whether directly or indirectly, or takes part, in the management of the company.

(4) The regulations may make different provision for different cases and may in particular distinguish between cases by reference to—
   (a) the conduct on the basis of which the person became subject to foreign restrictions;
   (b) the nature of the foreign restrictions;
   (c) the country or territory under whose law the foreign restrictions were imposed.

(5) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

Power to require statements to be sent to the registrar of companies

1152 Statements from persons subject to foreign restrictions

(1) The Secretary of State may make provision by regulations requiring a person who—
   (a) is subject to foreign restrictions, and
   (b) is not disqualified under this Part,
   to send a statement to the registrar if he does anything that, if done by a person disqualified under this Part, would be in breach of the disqualification.

(2) The statement must include such information as may be specified in the regulations relating to—
   (a) the person’s activities in relation to UK companies, and
   (b) the foreign restrictions to which the person is subject.

(3) The statement must be sent to the registrar within such period as may be specified in the regulations.

(4) The regulations may make different provision for different cases and may in particular distinguish between cases by reference to—
(a) the conduct on the basis of which the person became subject to foreign restrictions;
(b) the nature of the foreign restrictions;
(c) the country or territory under whose law the foreign restrictions were imposed.

(5) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

1153 Statements from persons disqualified

(1) The Secretary of State may make provision by regulations requiring a statement or notice sent to the registrar of companies under any of the provisions listed below that relates (wholly or partly) to a person who—
   (a) is a person disqualified under this Part, or
   (b) is subject to a disqualification order or disqualification undertaking under the Company Directors Disqualification Act 1986 (c. 46) or the Company Directors Disqualification (Northern Ireland) Order 2002 (S.I. 2002/3150 (N.I. 4)),

to be accompanied by an additional statement.

(2) The provisions referred to above are—
   (a) section 12 (statement of a company’s proposed officers),
   (b) section 167(2) (notice of person having become director),
   (c) section 276 (notice of a person having become secretary or one of joint secretaries), and
   (d) section 287(2) (notice of a person having been appointed an authorised signatory under Part 13).

(3) The additional statement is a statement that the person has obtained permission from a court, on an application under section 1148(5) or (as the case may be) for the purposes of section 1(1)(a) of the Company Directors Disqualification Act 1986 or Article 3(1) of the Company Directors Disqualification (Northern Ireland) Order 2002 (S.I. 2002/3150 (N.I. 4)), to act in the capacity in question.

(4) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

1154 Statements: whether to be made public

(1) Regulations under section 1152 or 1153 (statements required to be sent to registrar) may provide that a statement sent to the registrar of companies under the regulations is to be treated as a record relating to a company for the purposes of section 1046 (the companies register).

(2) The regulations may make provision as to the circumstances in which such a statement is to be, or may be—
   (a) withheld from public inspection, or
   (b) removed from the register.

(3) The regulations may, in particular, provide that a statement is not to be withheld from public inspection or removed from the register unless the person to whom it relates provides such information, and satisfies such other conditions, as may be specified.
(4) The regulations may provide that section 1047 (note of removal of material from the register) does not apply, or applies with such modifications as may be specified, in the case of material removed from the register under the regulations.

(5) In this section “specified” means specified in the regulations.

1155 Offences

(1) Regulations under section 1152 or 1153 may provide that it is an offence for a person—
   (a) to fail to comply with a requirement under the regulations to send a statement to the registrar;
   (b) knowingly or recklessly to send a statement under the regulations to the registrar that is misleading, false or deceptive in a material particular.

(2) The regulations may provide that a person guilty of such an offence is liable—
   (a) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or a fine (or both);
   (b) on summary conviction—
      (i) in England and Wales, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding twelve months or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both);
      (ii) in Scotland or Northern Ireland, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months, or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both).

(3) In relation to an offence committed before the commencement of section 154(1) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (c. 44), for “twelve months” in subsection (2)(b)(i) substitute “six months”.

PART 41

BUSINESS NAMES

CHAPTER 1

RESTRICTED OR PROHIBITED NAMES

Introductory

1156 Application of this Chapter

(1) This Chapter applies to any person carrying on business in the United Kingdom.

(2) The provisions of this Chapter do not prevent—
   (a) an individual carrying on business under a name consisting of his surname without any addition other than a permitted addition, or
   (b) individuals carrying on business in partnership under a name consisting of the surnames of all the partners without any addition other than a permitted addition.

(3) The following are the permitted additions—
(a) in the case of an individual, his forename or initial;
(b) in the case of a partnership—
   (i) the forenames of individual partners or the initials of those forenames, or
   (ii) where two or more individual partners have the same surname, the addition of “s” at the end of that surname;
(c) in either case, an addition merely indicating that the business is carried on in succession to a former owner of the business.

**Sensitive words or expressions**

### 1157 Name suggesting connection with government or public authority

(1) A person must not, without the approval of the Secretary of State, carry on business in the United Kingdom under a name that would be likely to give the impression that the business is connected with—
   (a) Her Majesty’s Government, any part of the Scottish administration or Her Majesty’s Government in Northern Ireland,
   (b) any local authority, or
   (c) any public authority specified for the purposes of this section by regulations made by the Secretary of State.

(2) For the purposes of this section—
   “local authority” means—
   (a) a local authority within the meaning of the Local Government Act 1972 (c. 70), the Common Council of the City of London or the Council of the Isles of Scilly,
   (b) a council constituted under section 2 of the Local Government etc. (Scotland) Act 1994 (c. 39), or
   (c) a district council in Northern Ireland;
   “public authority” includes any person or body having functions of a public nature.

(3) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

(4) A person who contravenes this section commits an offence.

(5) Where an offence under this section is committed by a body corporate, an offence is also committed by every officer of the body who is in default.

(6) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 3 on the standard scale.

### 1158 Other sensitive words or expressions

(1) A person must not, without the approval of the Secretary of State, carry on business in the United Kingdom under a name that includes a word or expression for the time being specified in regulations made by the Secretary of State under this section.

(2) Regulations under this section are subject to approval after being made.

(3) A person who contravenes this section commits an offence.
(4) Where an offence under this section is committed by a body corporate, an offence is also committed by every officer of the body who is in default.

(5) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 3 on the standard scale.

1159 Requirement to seek comments of government department or other relevant body

(1) The Secretary of State may by regulations under—
   (a) section 1157 (name suggesting connection with government or public authority), or
   (b) section 1158 (other sensitive words or expressions),
   require that, in connection with an application for the approval of the Secretary of State under that section, the applicant must seek the view of a specified Government department or other body.

(2) Where such a requirement applies, the applicant must request the specified department or other body (in writing) to indicate whether (and if so why) it has any objections to the proposed name.

(3) He must submit to the Secretary of State a statement that such a request has been made and a copy of any response received from the specified body.

(4) If these requirements are not complied with, the Secretary of State may refuse to consider the application for approval.

1160 Withdrawal of Secretary of State’s approval

(1) This section applies to approval given for the purposes of—
   section 1157 (name suggesting connection with government or public authority), or
   section 1158 (other sensitive words or expressions).

(2) If it appears to the Secretary of State that there are overriding considerations of public policy that require such approval to be withdrawn, the approval may be withdrawn by notice to the person concerned.

(3) The notice must state the date as from which approval is withdrawn.

Misleading names

1161 Name containing inappropriate indication of company type or legal form

(1) The Secretary of State may make provision by regulations prohibiting a person from carrying on business in the United Kingdom under a name consisting of or containing specified words, expressions or other indications—
   (a) that are associated with a particular type of company or form of organisation, or
   (b) that are similar to words, expressions or other indications associated with a particular type of company or form of organisation.
(2) The regulations may prohibit the use of words, expressions or other indications—
   (a) in a specified part, or otherwise than in a specified part, of a name;
   (b) in conjunction with, or otherwise than in conjunction with, such other words, expressions or indications as may be specified.

(3) In this section “specified” means specified in the regulations.

(4) Regulations under this section are subject to negative resolution procedure.

(5) A person who uses a name in contravention of regulations under this section commits an offence.

(6) Where an offence under this section is committed by a body corporate, an offence is also committed by every officer of the body who is in default.

(7) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 3 on the standard scale.

1162 Name giving misleading indication of activities

(1) A person must not carry on business in the United Kingdom under a name that gives so misleading an indication of the nature of the activities of the business as to be likely to cause harm to the public.

(2) A person who uses a name in contravention of this section commits an offence.

(3) Where an offence under this section is committed by a body corporate, an offence is also committed by every officer of the body who is in default.

(4) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 3 on the standard scale.

Supplementary

1163 Savings for existing lawful business names

(1) This section has effect in relation to—
   sections 1156 to 1160 (sensitive words or expressions), and
   section 1161 (inappropriate indication of company type or legal form).

(2) Those sections do not apply to the carrying on of a business by a person who—
   (a) carried on the business immediately before the date on which this Chapter came into force, and
   (b) continues to carry it on under the name that immediately before that date was its lawful business name.

(3) Where—
   (a) a business is transferred to a person on or after the date on which this Chapter came into force, and
   (b) that person carries on the business under the name that was its lawful business name immediately before the transfer,
those sections do not apply in relation to the carrying on of the business under that name during the period of twelve months beginning with the date of the transfer.

(4) In this section “lawful business name”, in relation to a business, means a name under which the business was carried on without contravening—

(a) section 2(1) of the Business Names Act 1985 (c. 7) or Article 4(1) of the Business Names (Northern Ireland) Order 1986 (S.I. 1986/1033 N.I. 7)), or

(b) after this Chapter has come into force, the provisions of this Chapter.

CHAPTER 2

DISCLOSURE REQUIRED IN CASE OF INDIVIDUAL OR PARTNERSHIP

Introductory

1164 Application of this Chapter

(1) This Chapter applies to an individual or partnership carrying on business in the United Kingdom under a business name.

(2) For the purposes of this Chapter a “business name” means a name other than—

(a) in the case of an individual, his surname without any addition other than a permitted addition;

(b) in the case of a partnership—

(i) the surnames of all partners who are individuals, and

(ii) the corporate names of all partners who are bodies corporate, without any addition other than a permitted addition.

(3) The following are the permitted additions—

(a) in the case of an individual, his forename or initial;

(b) in the case of a partnership—

(i) the forenames of individual partners or the initials of those forenames, or

(ii) where two or more individual partners have the same surname, the addition of “s” at the end of that surname;

(c) in either case, an addition merely indicating that the business is carried on in succession to a former owner of the business.

1165 Information required to be disclosed

The “information required by this Chapter” is—

(a) in the case of an individual, his name;

(b) in the case of a partnership, the name of each member of the partnership;

and in relation to each person so named, an address in the United Kingdom at which service of any document relating in any way to the business will be effective.
Disclosure requirements

1166 Disclosure required: business documents etc

(1) A person carrying on business in the United Kingdom under a business name must state the information required by this Chapter, in legible characters, on all—
   (a) business letters,
   (b) written orders for goods or services to be supplied to the business,
   (c) invoices and receipts issued in the course of the business, and
   (d) written demands for payment of debts arising in the course of the business.

This subsection has effect subject to section 1167 (exemption for large partnerships if certain conditions met).

(2) A person carrying on business in the United Kingdom under a business name must secure that the information required by this Chapter is immediately given, by written notice, to any person with whom anything is done or discussed in the course of the business and who asks for that information.

(3) The Secretary of State may by regulations require that such notices be given in a specified form.

(4) Regulations under this section are subject to negative resolution procedure.

1167 Exemption for large partnerships if certain conditions met

(1) Section 1166(1) (disclosure required in business documents) does not apply in relation to a document issued by a partnership of more than 20 persons if the following conditions are met.

(2) The conditions are that—
   (a) the partnership maintains at its principal place of business a list of the names of all the partners,
   (b) no partner’s name appears in the document, except in the text or as a signatory, and
   (c) the document states in legible characters the address of the partnership’s principal place of business and that the list of the partners’ names is open to inspection there.

(3) Where a partnership maintains a list of the partners’ names for the purposes of this section, any person may inspect the list during office hours.

(4) Where an inspection required by a person in accordance with this section is refused, an offence is committed by any member of the partnership concerned who without reasonable excuse refused the inspection or permitted it to be refused.

(5) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (4) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 3 on the standard scale.
Disclosure required: business premises

(1) A person carrying on business in the United Kingdom under a business name must, in any premises—
   (a) where the business is carried on, and
   (b) to which customers of the business or suppliers of goods or services to the business have access,
   display in a prominent position, so that it may easily be read by such customers or suppliers, a notice containing the information required by this Chapter.

(2) The Secretary of State may by regulations require that such notices be displayed in a specified form.

(3) Regulations under this section are subject to negative resolution procedure.

Consequences of failure to make required disclosure

Criminal consequences of failure to make required disclosure

(1) A person who without reasonable excuse fails to comply with the requirements of—
   section 1166 (disclosure required: business documents etc), or
   section 1168 (disclosure required: business premises),
commits an offence.

(2) Where an offence under this section is committed by a body corporate, an offence is also committed by every officer of the body who is in default.

(3) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 3 on the standard scale.

(4) References in this section to the requirements of section 1166 or 1168 include the requirements of regulations under that section.

Civil consequences of failure to make required disclosure

(1) This section applies to any legal proceedings brought by a person to whom this Chapter applies to enforce a right arising out of a contract made in the course of a business in respect of which he was, at the time the contract was made, in breach of section 1166(1) or (2) (disclosure in business documents etc) or section 1168(1) (disclosure at business premises).

(2) The proceedings shall be dismissed if the defendant (in Scotland, the defender) to the proceedings shows—
   (a) that he has a claim against the claimant (pursuer) arising out of the contract that he has been unable to pursue by reason of the latter’s breach of the requirements of this Chapter, or
   (b) that he has suffered some financial loss in connection with the contract by reason of the claimant’s (pursuer’s) breach of those requirements, unless the court before which the proceedings are brought is satisfied that it is just and equitable to permit the proceedings to continue.
(3) References in this section to the requirements of this Chapter include the requirements of regulations under this Chapter.

(4) This section does not affect the right of any person to enforce such rights as he may have against another person in any proceedings brought by that person.

CHAPTER 3

SUPPLEMENTARY

1171 Application of general provisions about offences

The provisions of sections 1091 to 1097 (general provisions about offences) apply in relation to offences under this Part as in relation to offences under the Companies Acts.

1172 Interpretation

In this Part—

“business” includes a profession;
“initial” includes any recognised abbreviation of a name;
“partnership” means—

(a) a partnership within the Partnership Act 1890 (c. 39), or
(b) a limited partnership registered under the Limited Partnerships Act 1907 (c. 24),
or a firm or entity of a similar character formed under the law of a country or territory outside the United Kingdom;

“surname”, in relation to a peer or person usually known by a British title different from his surname, means the title by which he is known.

PART 42

STATUTORY AUDITORS

CHAPTER 1

INTRODUCTORY

1173 Main purposes of Part

The main purposes of this Part are—

(a) to secure that only persons who are properly supervised and appropriately qualified are appointed as statutory auditors, and
(b) to secure that audits by persons so appointed are carried out properly, with integrity and with a proper degree of independence.

1174 Meaning of “statutory auditor” etc

(1) In this Part “statutory auditor” means—

(a) a person appointed as auditor under Part 17 of this Act,
(b) a person appointed as auditor under section 77 of or Schedule 11 to the Building Societies Act 1986 (c. 53),
(c) a person appointed as auditor of an insurer that is a friendly society under section 72 of or Schedule 14 to the Friendly Societies Act 1992 (c. 40),

(d) a person appointed as auditor of an insurer that is an industrial and provident society under section 4 of the Friendly and Industrial and Provident Societies Act 1968 (c. 55) or under section 38 of the Industrial and Provident Societies Act (Northern Ireland) 1969 (c. 24 (N.I.)),

(e) a person appointed as auditor for the purposes of regulation 3 of the Insurance Accounts Directive (Lloyd’s Syndicate and Aggregate Accounts) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/3219) or appointed to report on the “aggregate accounts” within the meaning of those Regulations,

(f) a person appointed as auditor of an insurer for the purposes of regulation 3 of the Insurance Accounts Directive (Miscellaneous Insurance Undertakings) Regulations 1993 (S.I. 1993/3245),

(g) a person appointed as auditor of a bank for the purposes of regulation 4 of the Bank Accounts Directive (Miscellaneous Banks) Regulations 1991 (S.I. 1991/2704), and

(h) a person appointed as auditor of a prescribed person under a prescribed enactment authorising or requiring the appointment; and the expressions “statutory audit” and “statutory audit work” are to be construed accordingly.

(2) In this Part “audited person” means the person in respect of whom a statutory audit is conducted.

(3) In subsection (1)—

“bank” means a person who—

(a) is a credit institution within the meaning given by Article 1.1 of Directive 2000/12/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council relating to the taking up and pursuit of the business of credit institutions, and

(b) is a company or a firm as defined in Article 48 of the Treaty establishing the European Community;

“friendly society” means a friendly society within the meaning of the Friendly Societies Act 1992 (c. 40);

“industrial and provident society” means—

(a) a society registered under the Industrial and Provident Societies Act 1965 (c. 12) or a society deemed by virtue of section 4 of that Act to be so registered, or

(b) a society registered under the Industrial and Provident Societies Act (Northern Ireland) 1969 or a society deemed by virtue of section 4 of that Act to be so registered;

“insurer” means a person who is an insurance undertaking within the meaning given by Article 2.1 of Council Directive 1991/674/EEC on the annual accounts and consolidated accounts of insurance undertakings;

“prescribed” means prescribed, or of a description prescribed, by order made by the Secretary of State for the purposes of subsection (1)(h).

(4) An order under this section is subject to negative resolution procedure.
1175 Eligibility for appointment as a statutory auditor: overview

A person is eligible for appointment as a statutory auditor only if the person is so eligible—
(a) by virtue of Chapter 2 (individuals and firms), or
(b) by virtue of Chapter 3 (Comptroller and Auditor General, etc).

CHAPTER 2

INDIVIDUALS AND FIRMS

Eligibility for appointment

1176 Individuals and firms: eligibility for appointment as a statutory auditor

(1) An individual or firm is eligible for appointment as a statutory auditor if the individual or firm—
   (a) is a member of a recognised supervisory body, and
   (b) is eligible for appointment under the rules of that body.

(2) In the cases to which section 1186 applies (individuals retaining only 1967 Act authorisation) a person’s eligibility for appointment as a statutory auditor is restricted as mentioned in that section.

1177 Effect of ineligibility

(1) No person may act as statutory auditor of an audited person if he is ineligible for appointment as a statutory auditor.

(2) If at any time during his term of office a statutory auditor becomes ineligible for appointment as a statutory auditor, he must immediately—
   (a) resign his office (with immediate effect), and
   (b) give notice in writing to the audited person that he has resigned by reason of his becoming ineligible for appointment.

(3) A person is guilty of an offence if—
   (a) he acts as a statutory auditor in contravention of subsection (1), or
   (b) he fails to give the notice mentioned in paragraph (b) of subsection (2) in accordance with that subsection.

(4) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (3) is liable—
   (a) on conviction on indictment, to a fine, and
   (b) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum.

(5) A person is guilty of an offence if—
   (a) he has been convicted of an offence under subsection (3)(a) or this subsection, and
   (b) he continues to act as a statutory auditor in contravention of subsection (1) after the conviction.

(6) A person is guilty of an offence if—
   (a) he has been convicted of an offence under subsection (3)(b) or this subsection, and
(b) he continues, after the conviction, to fail to give the notice mentioned in subsection (2)(b).

(7) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (5) or (6) is liable—
   (a) on conviction on indictment, to a fine, and
   (b) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding one-tenth of the
       statutory maximum for each day on which the act or the failure
       continues.

(8) In proceedings against a person for an offence under this section it is a defence
    for him to show that he did not know and had no reason to believe that he was,
    or had become, ineligible for appointment as a statutory auditor.

Independence requirement

1178 Independence requirement

(1) A person may not act as statutory auditor of an audited person if one or more
    of subsections (2), (3) and (4) apply to him.

(2) This subsection applies if the person is—
    (a) an officer or employee of the audited person, or
    (b) a partner or employee of such a person, or a partnership of which such
        a person is a partner.

(3) This subsection applies if the person is—
    (a) an officer or employee of an associated undertaking of the audited
        person, or
    (b) a partner or employee of such a person, or a partnership of which such
        a person is a partner.

(4) This subsection applies if there exists, between—
    (a) the person or an associate of his, and
    (b) the audited person or an associated undertaking of the audited person,
        a connection of any such description as may be specified by regulations made
        by the Secretary of State.

(5) An auditor of an audited person is not to be regarded as an officer or employee
    of the person for the purposes of subsections (2) and (3).

(6) In this section “associated undertaking”, in relation to an audited person,
    means—
    (a) a parent undertaking or subsidiary undertaking of the audited person,
        or
    (b) a subsidiary undertaking of a parent undertaking of the audited
        person.

(7) Regulations under subsection (4) are subject to negative resolution procedure.

1179 Effect of lack of independence

(1) If at any time during his term of office a statutory auditor becomes prohibited
    from acting by section 1178(1), he must immediately—
    (a) resign his office (with immediate effect), and
(b) give notice in writing to the audited person that he has resigned by reason of his lack of independence.

(2) A person is guilty of an offence if—
   (a) he acts as a statutory auditor in contravention of section 1178(1), or
   (b) he fails to give the notice mentioned in paragraph (b) of subsection (1) in accordance with that subsection.

(3) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (2) is liable—
   (a) on conviction on indictment, to a fine, and
   (b) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum.

(4) A person is guilty of an offence if—
   (a) he has been convicted of an offence under subsection (2)(a) or this subsection, and
   (b) he continues to act as a statutory auditor in contravention of section 1178(1) after the conviction.

(5) A person is guilty of an offence if—
   (a) he has been convicted of an offence under subsection (2)(b) or this subsection, and
   (b) after the conviction, he continues to fail to give the notice mentioned in subsection (1)(b).

(6) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (4) or (5) is liable—
   (a) on conviction on indictment, to a fine, and
   (b) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding one-tenth of the statutory maximum for each day on which the act or the failure continues.

(7) In proceedings against a person for an offence under this section it is a defence for him to show that he did not know and had no reason to believe that he was, or had become, prohibited from acting as statutory auditor of the audited person by section 1178(1).

Effect of appointment of a partnership

1180 Effect of appointment of a partnership

(1) This section applies where a partnership constituted under the law of—
   (a) England and Wales,
   (b) Northern Ireland, or
   (c) any other country or territory in which a partnership is not a legal person,
   is by virtue of this Chapter appointed as statutory auditor of an audited person.

(2) Unless a contrary intention appears, the appointment is an appointment of the partnership as such and not of the partners.

(3) Where the partnership ceases, the appointment is to be treated as extending to—
   (a) any appropriate partnership which succeeds to the practice of that partnership, or
(b) any other appropriate person who succeeds to that practice having
previously carried it on in partnership.

(4) For the purposes of subsection (3)—
   (a) a partnership is to be regarded as succeeding to the practice of another
       partnership only if the members of the successor partnership are
       substantially the same as those of the former partnership, and
   (b) a partnership or other person is to be regarded as succeeding to the
       practice of a partnership only if it or he succeeds to the whole or
       substantially the whole of the business of the former partnership.

(5) Where the partnership ceases and the appointment is not treated under
subsection (3) as extending to any partnership or other person, the
appointment may with the consent of the audited person be treated as
extending to an appropriate partnership, or other appropriate person, who
succeeds to—
   (a) the business of the former partnership, or
   (b) such part of it as is agreed by the audited person is to be treated as
       comprising the appointment.

(6) For the purposes of this section, a partnership or other person is “appropriate”
if it or he—
   (a) is eligible for appointment as a statutory auditor by virtue of this
       Chapter, and
   (b) is not prohibited by section 1178(1) from acting as statutory auditor of
       the audited person.

Supervisory bodies

1181 Supervisory bodies

(1) In this Part a “supervisory body” means a body established in the United
Kingdom (whether a body corporate or an unincorporated association) which
maintains and enforces rules as to—
   (a) the eligibility of persons for appointment as a statutory auditor, and
   (b) the conduct of statutory audit work,
which are binding on persons seeking appointment or acting as a statutory
auditor either because they are members of that body or because they are
otherwise subject to its control.

(2) In this Part references to the members of a supervisory body are to the persons
who, whether or not members of the body, are subject to its rules in seeking
appointment or acting as a statutory auditor.

(3) In this Part references to the rules of a supervisory body are to the rules
(whether or not laid down by the body itself) which the body has power to
enforce and which are relevant for the purposes of this Part.
This includes rules relating to the admission or expulsion of members of the
body, so far as relevant for the purposes of this Part.

(4) Schedule 10 has effect with respect to the recognition of supervisory bodies for
the purposes of this Part.
1182 Exemption from liability for damages

(1) No person within subsection (2) is to be liable in damages for anything done or omitted in the discharge or purported discharge of functions to which this subsection applies.

(2) The persons within this subsection are—
   (a) any recognised supervisory body,
   (b) any officer or employee of a recognised supervisory body, and
   (c) any member of the governing body of a recognised supervisory body.

(3) Subsection (1) applies to the functions of a recognised supervisory body so far as relating to, or to matters arising out of, any of the following—
   (a) rules, practices, powers and arrangements of the body to which the requirements of Part 2 of Schedule 10 apply;
   (b) the obligations with which paragraph 20 of that Schedule requires the body to comply;
   (c) any guidance issued by the body;
   (d) the obligations imposed on the body by or by virtue of this Part.

(4) The reference in subsection (3)(c) to guidance issued by a recognised supervisory body is a reference to any guidance or recommendation which is—
   (a) issued or made by it to all or any class of its members or persons seeking to become members, and
   (b) relevant for the purposes of this Part,

including any guidance or recommendation relating to the admission or expulsion of members of the body, so far as relevant for the purposes of this Part.

(5) Subsection (1) does not apply—
   (a) if the act or omission is shown to have been in bad faith, or
   (b) so as to prevent an award of damages in respect of the act or omission on the ground that it was unlawful as a result of section 6(1) of the Human Rights Act 1998 (c. 42) (acts of public authorities incompatible with Convention rights).

Professional qualifications

1183 Appropriate qualifications

(1) A person holds an appropriate qualification for the purposes of this Chapter if and only if—
   (a) he holds a recognised professional qualification obtained in the United Kingdom,
   (b) immediately before the commencement of this Chapter, he—
      (i) held an appropriate qualification for the purposes of Part 2 of the Companies Act 1989 (c. 40) (eligibility for appointment as company auditor) by virtue of section 31(1)(a) or (c) of that Act, or
      (ii) was treated as holding an appropriate qualification for those purposes by virtue of section 31(2), (3) or (4) of that Act,
   (c) immediately before the commencement of this Chapter, he—
(i) held an appropriate qualification for the purposes of Part III of the Companies (Northern Ireland) Order 1990 (S.I. 1990/593 (N.I. 5)) by virtue of Article 34(1)(a) or (c) of that Order, or
(ii) was treated as holding an appropriate qualification for those purposes by virtue of Article 34(2), (3) or (4) of that Order,
(d) he is within subsection (2),
(e) he has been authorised to practise the profession of statutory auditor pursuant to the European Communities (Recognition of Professional Qualifications) (First General System) Regulations 2005 (S.I. 2005/18) and has fulfilled any requirements imposed pursuant to regulation 6 of those Regulations, or
(f) subject to any direction under section 1185(5), he is regarded for the purposes of this Chapter as holding an approved overseas qualification.

(2) A person is within this subsection if—
(a) before 1st January 1990, he began a course of study or practical training leading to a professional qualification in accountancy offered by a body established in the United Kingdom,
(b) he obtained that qualification on or after 1st January 1990 and before 1st January 1996, and
(c) the Secretary of State approves his qualification as an appropriate qualification for the purposes of this Chapter.

(3) The Secretary of State may approve a qualification under subsection (2)(c) only if he is satisfied that, at the time the qualification was awarded, the body concerned had adequate arrangements to ensure that the qualification was awarded only to persons educated and trained to a standard equivalent to that required, at that time, in the case of a recognised professional qualification under Part 2 of the Companies Act 1989 (eligibility for appointment as company auditor).

1184 Qualifying bodies and recognised professional qualifications

(1) In this Part a “qualifying body” means a body established in the United Kingdom (whether a body corporate or an unincorporated association) which offers a professional qualification in accountancy.

(2) In this Part references to the rules of a qualifying body are to the rules (whether or not laid down by the body itself) which the body has power to enforce and which are relevant for the purposes of this Part.

This includes, so far as so relevant, rules relating to—
(a) admission to or expulsion from a course of study leading to a qualification,
(b) the award or deprivation of a qualification, or
(c) the approval of a person for the purposes of giving practical training or the withdrawal of such approval.

(3) Schedule 11 has effect with respect to the recognition for the purposes of this Part of a professional qualification offered by a qualifying body.
1185 Approval of overseas qualifications

(1) The Secretary of State may declare that the following are to be regarded for the purposes of this Chapter as holding an approved overseas qualification—
   (a) persons who are qualified to audit accounts under the law of a specified foreign country, or
   (b) persons who hold a specified professional qualification in accountancy obtained in a specified foreign country.

(2) A declaration under subsection (1)(b) may be expressed to be subject to the satisfaction of any specified requirement or requirements.

(3) The Secretary of State may make a declaration under subsection (1) only if he is satisfied that—
   (a) in the case of a declaration under subsection (1)(a), the fact that the persons in question are qualified to audit accounts under the law of the specified foreign country, or
   (b) in the case of a declaration under subsection (1)(b), the specified professional qualification taken with any requirement or requirements to be specified under subsection (2),
      affords an assurance of professional competence equivalent to that afforded by a recognised professional qualification.

(4) The Secretary of State may make a declaration under subsection (1) only if he is satisfied that the treatment that the persons who are the subject of the declaration will receive as a result of it is comparable to the treatment which is, or is likely to be, afforded in the specified foreign country or a part of it to—
   (a) in the case of a declaration under subsection (1)(a), some or all persons who are eligible to be appointed as a statutory auditor, and
   (b) in the case of a declaration under subsection (1)(b), some or all persons who hold a corresponding recognised professional qualification.

(5) The Secretary of State may direct that persons holding an approved overseas qualification are not to be treated as holding an appropriate qualification for the purposes of this Chapter unless they hold such additional educational qualifications as the Secretary of State may specify for the purpose of ensuring that such persons have an adequate knowledge of the law and practice in the United Kingdom relevant to the audit of accounts.

(6) The Secretary of State may give different directions in relation to different approved overseas qualifications.

(7) The Secretary of State may, if he thinks fit, having regard to the considerations mentioned in subsections (3) and (4), withdraw a declaration under subsection (1) in relation to—
   (a) persons becoming qualified to audit accounts under the law of the specified foreign country after such date as he may specify, or
   (b) persons obtaining the specified professional qualification after such date as he may specify.

(8) The Secretary of State may, if he thinks fit, having regard to the considerations mentioned in subsections (3) and (4), vary or revoke a requirement specified under subsection (2) from such date as he may specify.

(9) In this section “foreign country”, in relation to any time, means a country or territory that, at that time, is not a “relevant State” within the meaning of the
European Communities (Recognition of Professional Qualifications) (First General System) Regulations 2005 (S.I. 2005/18) or part of such a State.

1186 Eligibility of individuals retaining only 1967 Act authorisation

(1) A person whose only appropriate qualification is based on his retention of an authorisation originally granted by the Board of Trade or the Secretary of State under section 13(1) of the Companies Act 1967 (c. 81) is eligible only for appointment as auditor of an unquoted company.

(2) A company is “unquoted” if, at the time of the person’s appointment, neither the company, nor any parent undertaking of which it is a subsidiary undertaking, is a quoted company within the meaning of section 391(2).

(3) References to a person eligible for appointment as a statutory auditor by virtue of this Part in enactments relating to eligibility for appointment as auditor of a person other than a company do not include a person to whom this section applies.

1187 Matters to be notified to the Secretary of State

(1) The Secretary of State may require a recognised supervisory body or a recognised qualifying body—
   (a) to notify him immediately of the occurrence of such events as he may specify in writing and to give him such information in respect of those events as is so specified;
   (b) to give him, at such times or in respect of such periods as he may specify in writing, such information as is so specified.

(2) The notices and information required to be given must be such as the Secretary of State may reasonably require for the exercise of his functions under this Part.

(3) The Secretary of State may require information given under this section to be given in a specified form or verified in a specified manner.

(4) Any notice or information required to be given under this section must be given in writing unless the Secretary of State specifies or approves some other manner.

1188 The Secretary of State’s power to call for information

(1) The Secretary of State may by notice in writing require a person within subsection (2) to give him such information as he may reasonably require for the exercise of his functions under this Part.

(2) The persons within this subsection are—
   (a) any recognised supervisory body,
   (b) any recognised qualifying body, and
   (c) any person eligible for appointment as a statutory auditor by virtue of this Chapter.

(3) The Secretary of State may require that any information which he requires under this section is to be given within such reasonable time and verified in such manner as he may specify.
Enforcement

1189 Compliance orders

(1) If at any time it appears to the Secretary of State—
   (a) in the case of a recognised supervisory body, that any requirement of
       Schedule 10 is not satisfied,
   (b) in the case of a recognised professional qualification, that any
       requirement of Schedule 11 is not satisfied, or
   (c) that a recognised supervisory body or a recognised qualifying body has
       failed to comply with an obligation to which it is subject under or by
       virtue of this Part,

   he may, instead of revoking the relevant recognition order, make an
   application to the court under this section.

(2) If on an application under this section the court decides that the requirement
    in question is not satisfied or, as the case may be, that the body has failed to
    comply with the obligation in question, it may order the body to take such
    steps as the court directs for securing that the requirement is satisfied or that
    the obligation is complied with.

(3) In this section “the court” means the High Court or, in Scotland, the Court of
    Session.

CHAPTER 3

AUDITORS GENERAL

Eligibility for appointment

1190 Auditors General: eligibility for appointment as a statutory auditor

(1) In this Part “Auditor General” means—
    (a) the Comptroller and Auditor General,
    (b) the Auditor General for Scotland,
    (c) the Auditor General for Wales, or
    (d) the Comptroller and Auditor General for Northern Ireland.

(2) An Auditor General is eligible for appointment as a statutory auditor.

(3) Subsection (2) is subject to any suspension notice having effect under section
    1198 (notices suspending eligibility for appointment as a statutory auditor).

Conduct of audits

1191 Individuals responsible for audit work on behalf of Auditors General

An Auditor General must secure that each individual responsible for statutory
audit work on behalf of that Auditor General is eligible for appointment as a
statutory auditor by virtue of Chapter 2.
The Independent Supervisor

1192 Appointment of the Independent Supervisor

(1) The Secretary of State must appoint a body (“the Independent Supervisor”) to discharge the function mentioned in section 1193(1) (“the supervision function”).

(2) An appointment under this section must be made by order.

(3) A body may be appointed under this section only if it is a body corporate or an unincorporated association which appears to the Secretary of State—

(a) to be willing and able to discharge the supervision function, and

(b) to have arrangements in place relating to the discharge of that function which are such as to be likely to ensure that the conditions in subsection (4) are met.

(4) The conditions are—

(a) that the supervision function will be exercised effectively, and

(b) where the order is to contain any requirements or other provisions specified under subsection (5), that that function will be exercised in accordance with any such requirements or provisions.

(5) An order under this section may contain such requirements or other provisions relating to the exercise of the supervision function by the Independent Supervisor as appear to the Secretary of State to be appropriate.

(6) An order under this section is subject to negative resolution procedure.

Supervision of Auditors General

1193 Supervision of Auditors General by the Independent Supervisor

(1) The Independent Supervisor must supervise the performance by each Auditor General of his functions as a statutory auditor.

(2) The Independent Supervisor must discharge that duty by—

(a) entering into supervision arrangements with one or more bodies, and

(b) overseeing the effective operation of any supervision arrangements entered into by it.

(3) For this purpose “supervision arrangements” are arrangements entered into by the Independent Supervisor with a body, for the purposes of this section, in accordance with which the body does one or more of the following—

(a) determines standards relating to professional integrity and independence which must be applied by an Auditor General in statutory audit work;

(b) determines technical standards which must be applied by an Auditor General in statutory audit work and the manner in which those standards are to be applied in practice;

(c) monitors the performance of statutory audits carried out by an Auditor General;

(d) investigates any matter arising from the performance by an Auditor General of a statutory audit;
(e) holds disciplinary hearings in respect of an Auditor General which appear to be desirable following the conclusion of such investigations;

(f) decides whether (and, if so, what) disciplinary action should be taken against an Auditor General to whom such a hearing related.

(4) The Independent Supervisor may enter into supervision arrangements with a body despite any relationship that may exist between the Independent Supervisor and that body.

(5) The Independent Supervisor must notify each Auditor General in writing of any supervision arrangements that it enters into under this section.

(6) Supervision arrangements within subsection (3)(f) may, in particular, provide for the payment by an Auditor General of a fine to any person.

(7) Any fine received by the Independent Supervisor under supervision arrangements is to be paid into the Consolidated Fund.

1194 Duties of Auditors General in relation to supervision arrangements

(1) Each Auditor General must—

(a) comply with any standards of the kind mentioned in subsection (3)(a) or (b) of section 1193 determined under the supervision arrangements,

(b) take such steps as may be reasonably required of that Auditor General to enable his performance of statutory audits to be monitored by means of inspections carried out under the supervision arrangements, and

(c) comply with any decision of the kind mentioned in subsection (3)(f) of that section made under the supervision arrangements.

(2) Each Auditor General must pay to the body or bodies with which the Independent Supervisor enters into the supervision arrangements such proportion of the costs incurred by the body or bodies for the purposes of the arrangements as the Independent Supervisor may notify to him in writing.

(3) Expenditure under subsection (2) is—

(a) in the case of expenditure of the Comptroller and Auditor General, to be regarded as expenditure of the National Audit Office for the purposes of section 4(1) of the National Audit Act 1983 (c. 44);

(b) in the case of expenditure of the Comptroller and Auditor General for Northern Ireland, to be regarded as expenditure of the Northern Ireland Audit Office for the purposes of Article 6(1) of the Audit (Northern Ireland) Order 1987 (S.I. 1987/460 (N.I. 5)).

(4) In this section “the supervision arrangements” means the arrangements entered into under section 1193.

Reporting requirement

1195 Reports by the Independent Supervisor

(1) The Independent Supervisor must, at least once in each calendar year, prepare a report on the discharge of its functions.

(2) The Independent Supervisor must give a copy of each report prepared under subsection (1) to—

(a) the Secretary of State;
(b) the First Minister in Scotland;
(c) the First Minister and the deputy First Minister in Northern Ireland;
(d) the Assembly First Secretary in Wales.

(3) The Secretary of State must lay before each House of Parliament a copy of each report received by him under subsection (2)(a).

(4) In relation to a calendar year during which an appointment of a body as the Independent Supervisor is made or revoked by an order under section 1192, this section applies with such modifications as may be specified in the order.

Information

1196 Matters to be notified to the Independent Supervisor

(1) The Independent Supervisor may require an Auditor General—
(a) to notify the Independent Supervisor immediately of the occurrence of such events as it may specify in writing and to give it such information in respect of those events as is so specified;
(b) to give the Independent Supervisor, at such times or in respect of such periods as it may specify in writing, such information as is so specified.

(2) The notices and information required to be given must be such as the Independent Supervisor may reasonably require for the exercise of the functions conferred on it by or by virtue of this Part.

(3) The Independent Supervisor may require information given under this section to be given in a specified form or verified in a specified manner.

(4) Any notice or information required to be given under this section must be given in writing unless the Independent Supervisor specifies or approves some other manner.

1197 The Independent Supervisor’s power to call for information

(1) The Independent Supervisor may by notice in writing require an Auditor General to give it such information as it may reasonably require for the exercise of the functions conferred on it by or by virtue of this Part.

(2) The Independent Supervisor may require that any information which it requires under this section is to be given within such reasonable time and verified in such manner as it may specify.

Enforcement

1198 Suspension notices

(1) The Independent Supervisor may issue —
(a) a notice (a “suspension notice”) suspending an Auditor General’s eligibility for appointment as a statutory auditor in relation to all persons, or any specified person or persons, indefinitely or until a date specified in the notice;
(b) a notice amending or revoking a suspension notice previously issued to an Auditor General.
(2) In determining whether it is appropriate to issue a notice under subsection (1), the Independent Supervisor must have regard to—
   (a) the Auditor General’s performance of the obligations imposed on him by or by virtue of this Part, and
   (b) the Auditor General’s performance of his functions as a statutory auditor.

(3) A notice under subsection (1) must—
   (a) be in writing, and
   (b) state the date on which it takes effect (which must be after the period of three months beginning with the date on which it is issued).

(4) Before issuing a notice under subsection (1), the Independent Supervisor must—
   (a) give written notice of its intention to do so to the Auditor General, and
   (b) publish the notice mentioned in paragraph (a) in such manner as it thinks appropriate for bringing it to the attention of any other persons who are likely to be affected.

(5) A notice under subsection (4) must—
   (a) state the reasons for which the Independent Supervisor proposes to act, and
   (b) give particulars of the rights conferred by subsection (6).

(6) A person within subsection (7) may, within the period of three months beginning with the date of service or publication of the notice under subsection (4) or such longer period as the Independent Supervisor may allow, make written representations to the Independent Supervisor and, if desired, oral representations to a person appointed for that purpose by the Independent Supervisor.

(7) The persons within this subsection are—
   (a) the Auditor General, and
   (b) any other person who appears to the Independent Supervisor to be affected.

(8) The Independent Supervisor must have regard to any representations made in accordance with subsection (6) in determining—
   (a) whether to issue a notice under subsection (1), and
   (b) the terms of any such notice.

(9) If in any case the Independent Supervisor considers it appropriate to do so in the public interest it may issue a notice under subsection (1), without regard to the restriction in subsection (3)(b), even if—
   (a) no notice has been given or published under subsection (4), or
   (b) the period of time for making representations in pursuance of such a notice has not expired.

(10) On issuing a notice under subsection (1), the Independent Supervisor must—
   (a) give a copy of the notice to the Auditor General, and
   (b) publish the notice in such manner as it thinks appropriate for bringing it to the attention of persons likely to be affected.

(11) In this section “specified” means specified in, or of a description specified in, the suspension notice in question.
1199 Effect of suspension notices

(1) An Auditor General must not act as a statutory auditor at any time when a suspension notice issued to him in respect of the audited person has effect.

(2) If at any time during an Auditor General’s term of office as a statutory auditor a suspension notice issued to him in respect of the audited person takes effect, he must immediately—
   (a) resign his office (with immediate effect), and
   (b) give notice in writing to the audited person that he has resigned by reason of his becoming ineligible for appointment.

(3) A suspension notice does not make an Auditor General ineligible for appointment as a statutory auditor for the purposes of section 1177 (effect of ineligibility: criminal offences).

1200 Compliance orders

(1) If at any time it appears to the Independent Supervisor that an Auditor General has failed to comply with an obligation imposed on him by or by virtue of this Part, the Independent Supervisor may make an application to the court under this section.

(2) If on an application under this section the court decides that the Auditor General has failed to comply with the obligation in question, it may order the Auditor General to take such steps as the court directs for securing that the obligation is complied with.

(3) In this section “the court” means the High Court or, in Scotland, the Court of Session.

Proceedings

1201 Proceedings involving the Independent Supervisor

(1) If the Independent Supervisor is an unincorporated association, any relevant proceedings may be brought by or against it in the name of any body corporate whose constitution provides for the establishment of the body.

(2) For this purpose “relevant proceedings” means proceedings brought in or in connection with the exercise of any function by the body as the Independent Supervisor.

(3) Where an appointment under section 1192 is revoked, the revoking order may make such provision as the Secretary of State thinks fit with respect to pending proceedings.

Grants

1202 Grants to the Independent Supervisor

In section 16 of the Companies (Audit, Investigations and Community Enterprise) Act 2004 (c. 27) (grants to bodies concerned with accounting
standards etc), after subsection (2)(k) insert—
“(ka) exercising functions of the Independent Supervisor appointed under Chapter 3 of Part 42 of the Company Law Reform Act 2006;”.

CHAPTER 4

THE REGISTER OF AUDITORS ETC

1203 The register of auditors

(1) The Secretary of State must make regulations requiring the keeping of a register of—
(a) the persons eligible for appointment as a statutory auditor, and
(b) third country auditors (see Chapter 5) who apply to be registered in the specified manner and in relation to whom specified requirements are met.

(2) The regulations must require each person’s entry in the register to contain—
(a) his name and address,
(b) in the case of an individual eligible for appointment as a statutory auditor, the specified information relating to any firm on whose behalf he is responsible for statutory audit work,
(c) in the case of a firm eligible for appointment as a statutory auditor, the specified information relating to the individuals responsible for statutory audit work on its behalf,
(d) in the case of an individual or firm eligible for appointment as a statutory auditor by virtue of Chapter 2, the name of the relevant supervisory body, and
(e) in the case of a firm eligible for appointment as a statutory auditor by virtue of Chapter 2 or a third country auditor, the information mentioned in subsection (3), and may require each person’s entry to contain other specified information.

(3) The information referred to in subsection (2)(e) is—
(a) in relation to a body corporate, except where paragraph (b) applies, the name and address of each person who is a director of the body or holds any shares in it;
(b) in relation to a limited liability partnership, the name and address of each member of the partnership;
(c) in relation to a corporation sole, the name and address of the individual for the time being holding the office by the name of which he is the corporation sole;
(d) in relation to a partnership, the name and address of each partner.

(4) The regulations may provide that different parts of the register are to be kept by different persons.

(5) The regulations may impose such obligations as the Secretary of State thinks fit on—
(a) recognised supervisory bodies,
(b) any body designated by order under section 1216 (delegation of Secretary of State’s functions),
(c) persons eligible for appointment as a statutory auditor,
(d) third country auditors,
(e) any person with whom arrangements are made by one or more recognised supervisory bodies, or by any body designated by order under section 1216, with respect to the keeping of the register, or
(f) the Independent Supervisor appointed under section 1192.

(6) The regulations may include—
(a) provision requiring that specified entries in the register be open to inspection at times and places specified or determined in accordance with the regulations;
(b) provision enabling a person to require a certified copy of specified entries in the register;
(c) provision authorising the charging of fees for inspection, or the provision of copies, of such reasonable amount as may be specified or determined in accordance with the regulations.

(7) The Secretary of State may direct in writing that the requirements imposed by the regulations in accordance with subsections (2)(e) and (3), or such of those requirements as are specified in the direction, are not to apply, in whole or in part, in relation to a particular registered third country auditor or class of registered third country auditors.

(8) The obligations imposed by regulations under this section on such persons as are mentioned in subsection (5)(b) or (e) are enforceable on the application of the Secretary of State by injunction or, in Scotland, by an order under section 45 of the Court of Session Act 1988 (c. 36).

(9) In this section “specified” means specified by regulations under this section.

(10) Regulations under this section are subject to negative resolution procedure.

1204 Information to be made available to public

(1) The Secretary of State may make regulations requiring a person eligible for appointment as a statutory auditor, or a member of a specified class of such persons, to keep and make available to the public specified information, including information regarding—
(a) the person’s ownership and governance,
(b) the person’s internal controls with respect to the quality and independence of its audit work,
(c) the person’s turnover, and
(d) the audited persons of whom the person has acted as statutory auditor.

(2) Regulations under this section may—
(a) impose such obligations as the Secretary of State thinks fit on persons eligible for appointment as a statutory auditor;
(b) require the information to be made available to the public in a specified manner.

(3) In this section “specified” means specified by regulations under this section.

(4) Regulations under this section are subject to negative resolution procedure.
CHAPTER 5
REGISTERED THIRD COUNTRY AUDITORS

Introductory

1205 Meaning of “third country auditor”, “registered third country auditor” etc

(1) In this Part—
“third country auditor” means the auditor of the accounts of a traded non-Community company, and the expressions “third country audit” and “third country audit work” are to be construed accordingly;
“registered third country auditor” means a third country auditor who is entered in the register kept in accordance with regulations under section 1203(1).

(2) In subsection (1) “traded non-Community company” means a body corporate—
(a) which is incorporated or formed under the law of a country or territory which is not a member State or part of a member State,
(b) whose transferable securities are admitted to trading on a regulated market situated or operating in the United Kingdom, and
(c) which has not been excluded, or is not of a description of bodies corporate which has been excluded, from this definition by an order made by the Secretary of State.

(3) For this purpose—
“transferable securities” has the meaning given by Article 4.1(18) of that Directive.

(4) An order under this section is subject to negative resolution procedure.

Duties

1206 Duties of registered third country auditors

(1) A registered third country auditor must participate in—
(a) arrangements within paragraph 1 of Schedule 12 (arrangements for independent monitoring of audits of traded non-Community companies), and
(b) arrangements within paragraph 2 of that Schedule (arrangements for independent investigation for disciplinary purposes of public interest cases).

(2) A registered third country auditor must—
(a) take such steps as may be reasonably required of it to enable its performance of third country audits to be monitored by means of inspections carried out under the arrangements mentioned in subsection (1)(a), and
(b) comply with any decision as to disciplinary action to be taken against it made under the arrangements mentioned in subsection (1)(b).

(3) Schedule 12 makes further provision with respect to the arrangements in which registered third country auditors are required to participate.

(4) The Secretary of State may direct in writing that subsections (1) to (3) are not to apply, in whole or in part, in relation to a particular registered third country auditor or class of registered third country auditors.

Information

1207 Matters to be notified to the Secretary of State

(1) The Secretary of State may require a registered third country auditor—

   (a) to notify him immediately of the occurrence of such events as he may specify in writing and to give him such information in respect of those events as is so specified;

   (b) to give him, at such times or in respect of such periods as he may specify in writing, such information as is so specified.

(2) The notices and information required to be given must be such as the Secretary of State may reasonably require for the exercise of his functions under this Part.

(3) The Secretary of State may require information given under this section to be given in a specified form or verified in a specified manner.

(4) Any notice or information required to be given under this section must be given in writing unless the Secretary of State specifies or approves some other manner.

1208 The Secretary of State’s power to call for information

(1) The Secretary of State may by notice in writing require a registered third country auditor to give him such information as he may reasonably require for the exercise of his functions under this Part.

(2) The Secretary of State may require that any information which he requires under this section is to be given within such reasonable time and verified in such manner as he may specify.

Enforcement

1209 Compliance orders

(1) If at any time it appears to the Secretary of State that a registered third country auditor has failed to comply with an obligation imposed on him by or by virtue of this Part, the Secretary of State may make an application to the court under this section.

(2) If on an application under this section the court decides that the auditor has failed to comply with the obligation in question, it may order the auditor to take such steps as the court directs for securing that the obligation is complied with.
(3) In this section “the court” means the High Court or, in Scotland, the Court of Session.

1210 Removal of third country auditors from the register of auditors

(1) The Secretary of State may, by regulations, confer on the person keeping the register in accordance with regulations under section 1203(1) power to remove a third country auditor from the register.

(2) Regulations under this section must require the person keeping the register, in determining whether to remove a third country auditor from the register, to have regard to the auditor’s compliance with obligations imposed on him by or by virtue of this Part.

(3) Where provision is made under section 1203(4) (different parts of the register to be kept by different persons), references in this section to the person keeping the register are to the person keeping that part of the register which relates to third country auditors.

(4) Regulations under this section are subject to negative resolution procedure.

1211 Grants to bodies concerned with arrangements under Schedule 12

In section 16 of the Companies (Audit, Investigations and Community Enterprise) Act 2004 (c. 27) (grants to bodies concerned with accounting standards etc), after subsection (2)(ka) (inserted by section 1202) insert—

“(kb) establishing, maintaining or carrying out arrangements within paragraph 1 or 2 of Schedule 12 to the Company Law Reform Act 2006;”.

CHAPTER 6

SUPPLEMENTARY AND GENERAL

Power to require second company audit

1212 Secretary of State’s power to require second audit of a company

(1) This section applies where a person appointed as statutory auditor of a company was not an appropriate person for any part of the period during which the audit was conducted.

(2) The Secretary of State may direct the company concerned to retain an appropriate person—

(a) to conduct a second audit of the relevant accounts, or

(b) to review the first audit and to report (giving his reasons) whether a second audit is needed.

(3) For the purposes of subsections (1) and (2) a person is “appropriate” if he—

(a) is eligible for appointment as a statutory auditor or, if the person is an Auditor General, for appointment as statutory auditor of the company, and

(b) is not prohibited by section 1178(1) from acting as statutory auditor of the company.
(4) The Secretary of State must send a copy of a direction under subsection (2) to the registrar of companies.

(5) The company is guilty of an offence if—
   (a) it fails to comply with a direction under subsection (2) within the period of 21 days beginning with the date on which it is given, or
   (b) it has been convicted of a previous offence under this subsection and the failure to comply with the direction which led to the conviction continues after the conviction.

(6) The company must—
   (a) send a copy of a report under subsection (2)(b) to the registrar of companies, and
   (b) if the report states that a second audit is needed, take such steps as are necessary for the carrying out of that audit.

(7) The company is guilty of an offence if—
   (a) it fails to send a copy of a report under subsection (2)(b) to the registrar within the period of 21 days beginning with the date on which it receives it,
   (b) in a case within subsection (6)(b), it fails to take the steps mentioned immediately it receives the report, or
   (c) it has been convicted of a previous offence under this subsection and the failure to send a copy of the report, or take the steps, which led to the conviction continues after the conviction.

(8) A company guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction—
   (a) in a case within subsection (5)(a) or (7)(a) or (b), to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale, and
   (b) in a case within subsection (5)(b) or (7)(c), to a fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 5 on the standard scale for each day on which the failure continues.

(9) In this section “registrar of companies” has the meaning given by section 1026.

1213 Supplementary provision about second audits

(1) If a person accepts an appointment, or continues to act, as statutory auditor of a company at a time when he knows he is not an appropriate person, the company may recover from him any costs incurred by it in complying with the requirements of section 1212.

For this purpose “appropriate” is to be construed in accordance with subsection (3) of that section.

(2) Where a second audit is carried out under section 1212, any statutory or other provision applying in relation to the first audit applies also, in so far as practicable, in relation to the second audit.

(3) A direction under section 1212(2) is, on the application of the Secretary of State, enforceable by injunction or, in Scotland, by an order under section 45 of the Court of Session Act 1988 (c. 36).
False and misleading statements

1214 Misleading, false and deceptive statements

(1) A person is guilty of an offence if—

(a) for the purposes of or in connection with any application under this Part, or

(b) in purported compliance with any requirement imposed on him by or by virtue of this Part,

he knowingly or recklessly furnishes information which is misleading, false or deceptive in a material particular.

(2) It is an offence for a person whose name does not appear on the register of auditors kept under regulations under section 1203 in an entry made under subsection (1)(a) of that section to describe himself as a registered auditor or so to hold himself out as to indicate, or be reasonably understood to indicate, that he is a registered auditor.

(3) It is an offence for a person whose name does not appear on the register of auditors kept under regulations under that section in an entry made under subsection (1)(b) of that section to describe himself as a registered third country auditor or so to hold himself out as to indicate, or be reasonably understood to indicate, that he is a registered third country auditor.

(4) It is an offence for a body which is not a recognised supervisory body or a recognised qualifying body to describe itself as so recognised or so to describe itself or hold itself out as to indicate, or be reasonably understood to indicate, that it is so recognised.

(5) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (1) is liable—

(a) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or to a fine (or both);

(b) on summary conviction—

(i) in England and Wales, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding twelve months or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both),

(ii) in Scotland or Northern Ireland, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both).

In relation to an offence committed before the commencement of section 154(1) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003 (c. 44), for “twelve months” in paragraph (b)(i) substitute “six months”.

(6) Subject to subsection (7), a person guilty of an offence under subsection (2), (3) or (4) is liable on summary conviction—

(a) in England and Wales, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 51 weeks or to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale (or both),

(b) in Scotland or Northern Ireland, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months or to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale (or both).

In relation to an offence committed before the commencement of section 281(5) of the Criminal Justice Act 2003, for “51 weeks” in paragraph (a) substitute “six months”.

(7) Where a contravention of subsection (2), (3) or (4) involves a public display of
the offending description, the maximum fine that may be imposed is an
amount equal to level 5 on the standard scale multiplied by the number of days
for which the display has continued.

(8) It is a defence for a person charged with an offence under subsection (2), (3) or
(4) to show that he took all reasonable precautions and exercised all due
diligence to avoid the commission of the offence.

Fees

1215 Fees

(1) An applicant for a recognition order under this Part must pay such fee in
respect of his application as the Secretary of State may by regulations prescribe;
and no application is to be regarded as duly made unless this subsection is
complied with.

(2) The Secretary of State may by regulations prescribe periodical fees to be paid
by—
(a) every recognised supervisory body,
(b) every recognised qualifying body,
(c) every Auditor General, and
(d) every registered third country auditor.

(3) Fees received by the Secretary of State by virtue of this Part are to be paid into
the Consolidated Fund.

(4) Regulations under this section are subject to negative resolution procedure.

Delegation of Secretary of State’s functions

1216 Delegation of the Secretary of State’s functions

(1) The Secretary of State may make an order under this section (a “delegation
order”) for the purpose of enabling functions of the Secretary of State under
this Part to be exercised by a body designated by the order.

(2) The body designated by a delegation order may be either—
(a) a body corporate which is established by the order, or
(b) subject to section 1217, a body (whether a body corporate or an
unincorporated association) which is already in existence (“an existing
body”).

(3) A delegation order has the effect of transferring to the body designated by it all
functions of the Secretary of State under this Part—
(a) subject to such exceptions and reservations as may be specified in the
order, and
(b) except—
(i) his functions in relation to the body itself, and
(ii) his functions under section 1192 (appointment of Independent
Supervisor).
(4) A delegation order may confer on the body designated by it such other functions supplementary or incidental to those transferred as appear to the Secretary of State to be appropriate.

(5) Any transfer of functions under the following provisions must be subject to the reservation that the functions remain exercisable concurrently by the Secretary of State—
   (a) section 1188 (power to call for information from recognised bodies etc);
   (b) section 1208 (power to call for information from registered third country auditors);
   (c) section 1218 (directions to comply with international obligations).

(6) Any transfer of—
   (a) the function of refusing to make a declaration under section 1185(1) on the grounds referred to in section 1185(4) (lack of comparable treatment), or
   (b) the function of withdrawing such a declaration under section 1185(7) on those grounds,
   must be subject to the reservation that the function is exercisable only with the consent of the Secretary of State.

(7) A delegation order may be amended or, if it appears to the Secretary of State that it is no longer in the public interest that the order should remain in force, revoked by a further order under this section.

(8) Where functions are transferred or resumed, the Secretary of State may by order confer or, as the case may be, take away such other functions supplementary or incidental to those transferred or resumed as appear to him to be appropriate.

(9) Where a delegation order is made, Schedule 13 has effect with respect to—
   (a) the status of the body designated by the order in exercising functions of the Secretary of State under this Part,
   (b) the constitution and proceedings of the body where it is established by the order,
   (c) the exercise by the body of certain functions transferred to it, and
   (d) other supplementary matters.

(10) An order under this section which has the effect of transferring or resuming any functions is subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

(11) Any other order under this section is subject to negative resolution procedure.

1217 Delegation of functions to an existing body

(1) The Secretary of State’s power to make a delegation order under section 1216 which designates an existing body is exercisable in accordance with this section.

(2) The Secretary of State may make such a delegation order if it appears to him that—
   (a) the body is able and willing to exercise the functions that would be transferred by the order, and
   (b) the body has arrangements in place relating to the exercise of those functions which are such as to be likely to ensure that the conditions in subsection (3) are met.
Part 42 — Statutory Auditors
Chapter 6 — Supplementary and general

(3) The conditions are—
(a) that the functions in question will be exercised effectively, and
(b) where the delegation order is to contain any requirements or other provisions specified under subsection (4), that those functions will be exercised in accordance with any such requirements or provisions.

(4) The delegation order may contain such requirements or other provision relating to the exercise of the functions by the designated body as appear to the Secretary of State to be appropriate.

(5) An existing body—
(a) may be designated by a delegation order under section 1216, and
(b) may accordingly exercise functions of the Secretary of State in pursuance of the order, despite any involvement of the body in the exercise of any functions under arrangements within paragraph 21, 22, 23(1) or 24(1) of Schedule 10 or paragraph 1 or 2 of Schedule 12.

International obligations

1218 Directions to comply with international obligations

(1) If it appears to the Secretary of State—
(a) that any action proposed to be taken by a recognised supervisory body or a recognised qualifying body, or a body designated by order under section 1216, would be incompatible with Community obligations or any other international obligations of the United Kingdom, or
(b) that any action which that body has power to take is required for the purpose of implementing any such obligations,

he may direct the body not to take or, as the case may be, to take the action in question.

(2) A direction may include such supplementary or incidental requirements as the Secretary of State thinks necessary or expedient.

(3) A direction under this section given to a body designated by order under section 1216 is enforceable on the application of the Secretary of State by injunction or, in Scotland, by an order under section 45 of the Court of Session Act 1988 (c. 36).

General provision relating to offences

1219 Offences by bodies corporate, partnerships and unincorporated associations

(1) Where an offence under this Part committed by a body corporate is proved to have been committed with the consent or connivance of, or to be attributable to any neglect on the part of, an officer of the body, or a person purporting to act in any such capacity, he as well as the body corporate is guilty of the offence and liable to be proceeded against and punished accordingly.

(2) Where an offence under this Part committed by a partnership is proved to have been committed with the consent or connivance of, or to be attributable to any neglect on the part of, a partner, he as well as the partnership is guilty of the offence and liable to be proceeded against and punished accordingly.
(3) Where an offence under this Part committed by an unincorporated association (other than a partnership) is proved to have been committed with the consent or connivance of, or to be attributable to any neglect on the part of, any officer of the association or any member of its governing body, he as well as the association is guilty of the offence and liable to be proceeded against and punished accordingly.

1220 Time limits for prosecution of offences

(1) An information relating to an offence under this Part which is triable by a magistrates’ court in England and Wales may be so tried if it is laid at any time within the period of twelve months beginning with the date on which evidence sufficient in the opinion of the Director of Public Prosecutions or the Secretary of State to justify the proceedings comes to his knowledge.

(2) Proceedings in Scotland for an offence under this Part may be commenced at any time within the period of twelve months beginning with the date on which evidence sufficient in the Lord Advocate’s opinion to justify proceedings came to his knowledge or, where such evidence was reported to him by the Secretary of State, within the period of twelve months beginning with the date on which it came to the knowledge of the Secretary of State.

(3) For the purposes of subsection (2) proceedings are to be deemed to be commenced on the date on which a warrant to apprehend or cite the accused is granted, if the warrant is executed without undue delay.

(4) A complaint charging an offence under this Part which is triable by a magistrates’ court in Northern Ireland may be so tried if it is made at any time within the period of twelve months beginning with the date on which evidence sufficient in the opinion of the Director of Public Prosecutions for Northern Ireland or the Secretary of State to justify the proceedings comes to his knowledge.

(5) This section does not authorise—
(a) in the case of proceedings in England and Wales, the trial of an information laid,  
(b) in the case of proceedings in Scotland, the commencement of proceedings, or  
(c) in the case of proceedings in Northern Ireland, the trial of a complaint made,  
more than three years after the commission of the offence.

(6) For the purposes of this section a certificate of the Director of Public Prosecutions, the Lord Advocate, the Director of Public Prosecutions for Northern Ireland or the Secretary of State as to the date on which such evidence as is referred to above came to his knowledge is conclusive evidence.

(7) Nothing in this section affects proceedings within the time limits prescribed by section 127(1) of the Magistrates’ Courts Act 1980 (c. 43), section 331 of the Criminal Procedure (Scotland) Act 1975 or Article 19 of the Magistrates’ Courts (Northern Ireland) Order 1981 (S.I. 1981/1675 (N.I. 26)) (the usual time limits for criminal proceedings).
1221 Jurisdiction and procedure in respect of offences

(1) Summary proceedings for an offence under this Part may, without prejudice to any jurisdiction exercisable apart from this section, be taken—
   (a) against a body corporate or unincorporated association at any place at which it has a place of business, and
   (b) against an individual at any place where he is for the time being.

(2) Proceedings for an offence alleged to have been committed under this Part by an unincorporated association must be brought in the name of the association (and not in that of any of its members), and for the purposes of any such proceedings any rules of court relating to the service of documents apply as in relation to a body corporate.

(3) Section 33 of the Criminal Justice Act 1925 (c. 86) and Schedule 3 to the Magistrates’ Courts Act 1980 (procedure on charge of offence against a corporation) apply in a case in which an unincorporated association is charged in England and Wales with an offence under this Part as they apply in the case of a corporation.

(4) Section 18 of the Criminal Justice Act (Northern Ireland) 1945 (c. 15 (N.I.)) and Article 166 and Schedule 4 to the Magistrates’ Courts (Northern Ireland) Order 1981 (S.I. 1981/1675 (N.I. 26)) (procedure on charge of offence against a corporation) apply in a case in which an unincorporated association is charged in Northern Ireland with an offence under this Part as they apply in the case of a corporation.

(5) In relation to proceedings on indictment in Scotland for an offence alleged to have been committed under this Part by an unincorporated association, section 70 of the Criminal Procedure (Scotland) Act 1995 (proceedings on indictment against bodies corporate) applies as if the association were a body corporate.

(6) A fine imposed on an unincorporated association on its conviction of such an offence must be paid out of the funds of the association.

Notices etc

1222 Service of notices

(1) This section has effect in relation to any notice, direction or other document required or authorised by or by virtue of this Part to be given to or served on any person other than the Secretary of State.

(2) Any such document may be given to or served on the person in question—
   (a) by delivering it to him,
   (b) by leaving it at his proper address, or
   (c) by sending it by post to him at that address.

(3) Any such document may—
   (a) in the case of a body corporate, be given to or served on an officer of that body;
   (b) in the case of a partnership, be given to or served on any partner;
   (c) in the case of an unincorporated association other than a partnership, be given to or served on any member of the governing body of that association.
(4) For the purposes of this section and section 7 of the Interpretation Act 1978 (c. 30) (service of documents by post) in its application to this section, the proper address of any person is his last known address (whether of his residence or of a place where he carries on business or is employed) and also—
(a) in the case of a person who is eligible under the rules of a recognised supervisory body for appointment as a statutory auditor and who does not have a place of business in the United Kingdom, the address of that body;
(b) in the case of a body corporate or an officer of that body, the address of the registered or principal office of that body in the United Kingdom;
(c) in the case of an unincorporated association other than a partnership or a member of its governing body, its principal office in the United Kingdom.

1223 Documents in electronic form

(1) This section applies where—
(a) section 1222 authorises the giving or sending of a notice, direction or other document by its delivery to a particular person (“the recipient”), and
(b) the notice, direction or other document is transmitted to the recipient—
(i) by means of an electronic communications network, or
(ii) by other means but in a form that requires the use of apparatus by the recipient to render it intelligible.

(2) The transmission has effect for the purposes of this Part as a delivery of the notice, direction or other document to the recipient, but only if the recipient has indicated to the person making the transmission his willingness to receive the notice, direction or other document in the form and manner used.

(3) An indication to a person for the purposes of subsection (2)—
(a) must be given to the person in such manner as he may require,
(b) may be a general indication or an indication that is limited to notices, directions or other documents of a particular description,
(c) must state the address to be used,
(d) must be accompanied by such other information as the person requires for the making of the transmission, and
(e) may be modified or withdrawn at any time by a notice given to the person in such manner as he may require.

(4) In this section “electronic communications network” has the same meaning as in the Communications Act 2003 (c. 21).

Interpretation

1224 Meaning of “associate”

(1) In this Part “associate”, in relation to a person, is to be construed as follows.

(2) In relation to an individual, “associate” means—
(a) that individual’s spouse, civil partner or minor child or step-child,
(b) any body corporate of which that individual is a director, and
(c) any employee or partner of that individual.
(3) In relation to a body corporate, “associate” means—
   (a) any body corporate of which that body is a director,
   (b) any body corporate in the same group as that body, and
   (c) any employee or partner of that body or of any body corporate in the
       same group.

(4) In relation to a partnership constituted under the law of Scotland, or any other
    country or territory in which a partnership is a legal person, “associate”
    means—
    (a) any body corporate of which that partnership is a director,
    (b) any employee of or partner in that partnership, and
    (c) any person who is an associate of a partner in that partnership.

(5) In relation to a partnership constituted under the law of England and Wales or
    Northern Ireland, or the law of any other country or territory in which a
    partnership is not a legal person, “associate” means any person who is an
    associate of any of the partners.

(6) In subsections (2)(b), (3)(a) and (4)(a), in the case of a body corporate which is
    a limited liability partnership, “director” is to be read as “member”.

1225 Minor definitions

(1) In this Part, unless a contrary intention appears—
   “address” means—
   (a) in relation to an individual, his usual residential or business
       address;
   (b) in relation to a firm, its registered or principal office in the
       United Kingdom;
   “company” means any company or other body the accounts of which
   must be audited in accordance with Part 17;
   “director”, in relation to a body corporate, includes any person occupying
   in relation to it the position of a director (by whatever name called) and
   any person in accordance with whose directions or instructions (not
   being advice given in a professional capacity) the directors of the body
   are accustomed to act;
   “firm” means any entity, whether or not a legal person, which is not an
   individual and includes a body corporate, a corporation sole and a
   partnership or other unincorporated association;
   “group”, in relation to a body corporate, means the body corporate, any
   other body corporate which is its holding company or subsidiary and
   any other body corporate which is a subsidiary of that holding
   company;
   “holding company” and “subsidiary” are to be read in accordance with
   section 736 of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6);
   “officer”, in relation to a body corporate, includes a director, a manager, a
   secretary or, where the affairs of the body are managed by its members,
   a member;
   “parent undertaking” and “subsidiary undertaking” are to be read in
   accordance with section 1127 and Schedule 8.

(2) For the purposes of this Part a body is to be regarded as “established in the
    United Kingdom” if and only if—
(a) it is incorporated or formed under the law of the United Kingdom or a part of the United Kingdom, or
(b) its central management and control are exercised in the United Kingdom;
and any reference to a qualification “obtained in the United Kingdom” is to a qualification obtained from such a body.

(3) The Secretary of State may by regulations make such modifications of this Part as appear to him to be necessary or appropriate for the purposes of its application in relation to any firm, or description of firm, which is not a body corporate or a partnership.

(4) Regulations under subsection (3) are subject to negative resolution procedure.

1226 Index of defined expressions

The following Table shows provisions defining or otherwise explaining expressions used in this Part (other than provisions defining or explaining an expression used only in the same section)—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Expression</th>
<th>Provision</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>address</td>
<td>section 1225(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appropriate qualification</td>
<td>section 1183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>associate</td>
<td>section 1224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audited person</td>
<td>section 1174(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Auditor General</td>
<td>section 1190(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>company</td>
<td>section 1225(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delegation order</td>
<td>section 1216(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>director (of a body corporate)</td>
<td>section 1225(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enactment</td>
<td>section 1257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>established in the United Kingdom</td>
<td>section 1225(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>firm</td>
<td>section 1225(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group (in relation to a body corporate)</td>
<td>section 1225(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>holding company</td>
<td>section 1225(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>main purposes of this Part</td>
<td>section 1173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>member (of a supervisory body)</td>
<td>section 1181(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obtained in the United Kingdom</td>
<td>section 1225(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>officer</td>
<td>section 1225(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parent undertaking</td>
<td>section 1225(1)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1227 Power to make provision in consequence of changes affecting accountancy bodies

(1) The Secretary of State may by regulations make such amendments of enactments as appear to him to be necessary or expedient in consequence of any change of name, merger or transfer of engagements affecting—
   (a) a recognised supervisory body or recognised qualifying body, or
   (b) a body of accountants referred to in, or approved, authorised or otherwise recognised for the purposes of, any other enactment.

(2) Regulations under this section are subject to negative resolution procedure.

1228 Consequential amendments

Schedule 14 contains consequential amendments relating to this Part.
PART 43

TRANSPARENCY OBLIGATIONS AND RELATED MATTERS

Introductory

1229 The transparency obligations directive

In Part 6 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (c. 8) (which makes provision about official listing, prospectus requirements for transferable securities, etc), in section 103(1) (interpretation), at the appropriate place insert—

“the transparency obligations directive” means Directive 2004/109/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council relating to the harmonisation of transparency requirements in relation to information about issuers whose securities are admitted to trading on a regulated market;”.

Transparency obligations

1230 Transparency rules

(1) After section 89 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 insert—

“Transparency obligations

89A Transparency rules

(1) The competent authority may make rules for the purposes of the transparency obligations directive.

(2) The rules may include provision for dealing with any matters arising out of or related to any provision of the transparency obligations directive.

(3) The rules may include provision requiring—
(a) the provision of voteholder information to issuers or others (see section 89B), and
(b) the provision of information by issuers to the public or to the competent authority (see section 89C).

(4) The competent authority may also make rules—
(a) for the purpose of ensuring that voteholder information in respect of voting shares traded on a UK market other than a regulated market is made public or notified to the competent authority;
(b) providing for persons who hold comparable instruments (see section 89D(1)(c)) in respect of voting shares to be treated, in the circumstances specified in the rules, as holding some or all of the voting rights in respect of those shares.

(5) Without prejudice to subsections (1) to (3), rules under subsection (4) may, in particular, make provision—
(a) specifying how the proportion of—
Company Law Reform Bill [HL] (changed to Companies Bill [HL])

Part 43 — Transparency obligations and related matters

(i) the total voting rights in respect of shares in an issuer, or
(ii) the total voting rights in respect of a particular class of shares in an issuer,

held by a person is to be determined;

(b) specifying the circumstances in which, for the purposes of any determination of the voting rights held by a person (“P”) in respect of voting shares in an issuer, any voting rights held, or treated by virtue of subsection (4)(b) as held, by another person in respect of voting shares in the issuer are to be regarded as held by P;

(c) specifying the nature of the information which must be included in any notification;

(d) about the form of any notification;

(e) requiring any notification to be given within a specified period;

(f) specifying the manner in which any information is to be made public and the period within which it must be made public;

(g) specifying circumstances in which any of the requirements imposed by rules under subsection (4) does not apply.

(6) Rules under this section are referred to in this Part as “transparency rules”.

89B Provision of voteholder information

(1) Transparency rules may make provision for voteholder information in respect of voting shares to be notified, in circumstances specified in the rules—

(a) to the issuer, or

(b) to the public,

or to both.

(2) In this Part “voteholder information” in respect of voting shares means information relating to the proportion of voting rights held by a person in respect of the shares.

(3) Transparency rules may require notification of voteholder information relating to a person—

(a) initially, not later than such date as may be specified in the rules for the purposes of the first indent of Article 30.2 of the transparency obligations directive, and

(b) subsequently, in accordance with the following provisions.

(4) Transparency rules under subsection (3)(b) may require notification of voteholder information relating to a person only where there is a notifiable change in the proportion of—

(a) the total voting rights in respect of shares in the issuer, or

(b) the total voting rights in respect of a particular class of share in the issuer,

held by the person.

(5) For this purpose there is a “notifiable change” in the proportion of voting rights held by a person when the proportion changes—

(a) from being a proportion less than a designated proportion to a proportion equal to or greater than that designated proportion,
(b) from being a proportion equal to a designated proportion to a proportion greater or less than that designated proportion, or
(c) from being a proportion greater than a designated proportion to a proportion equal to or less than that designated proportion.

(6) In subsection (5) “designated” means designated by the rules.

89C Provision of information by issuers

(1) Transparency rules may make provision requiring the issuer of voting shares, in circumstances specified in the rules—
   (a) to make public information to which this section applies, or
   (b) to notify the competent authority of information to which this section applies,
   or to do both.

(2) This section applies to the following information—
   (a) the information required by Articles 4 to 6 of the transparency obligations directive;
   (b) voteholder information—
      (i) notified to the issuer, or
      (ii) relating to the proportion of voting rights held by the issuer in respect of voting shares in the issuer;
   (c) information relating to the issuer’s capital;
   (d) information relating to the rights attached to the shares or other securities issued by the issuer (including the total number of voting rights in respect of shares or of shares of a particular class);
   (e) information about new loan issues and about any guarantee or security in connection with any such issue.

(3) Transparency rules may require notification of voteholder information relating to the proportion of voting rights held by an issuer in respect of voting shares in the issuer—
   (a) initially, not later than such date as may be specified in the rules for the purposes of the second indent of Article 30.2 of the transparency obligations directive, and
   (b) subsequently, in accordance with the following provisions.

(4) Transparency rules under subsection (3)(b) may require notification of voteholder information relating to the proportion of voting rights held by an issuer in respect of voting shares in the issuer only where there is a notifiable change in the proportion of—
   (a) the total voting rights in respect of shares in the issuer, or
   (b) the total voting rights in respect of a particular class of share in the issuer,

held by the issuer.

(5) For this purpose there is a “notifiable change” in the proportion of voting rights held by a person when the proportion changes—
   (a) from being a proportion less than a designated proportion to a proportion equal to or greater than that designated proportion,
   (b) from being a proportion equal to a designated proportion to a proportion greater or less than that designated proportion, or
(c) from being a proportion greater than a designated proportion to a proportion equal to or less than that designated proportion.

(6) In subsection (5) “designated” means designated by the rules.

89D Transparency rules: interpretation etc

(1) For the purposes of sections 89A to 89E—
   (a) the voting rights in respect of any voting shares are the voting rights attached to those shares,
   (b) a person is to be regarded as holding the voting rights in respect of the shares—
      (i) if, by virtue of those shares, he is a shareholder within the meaning of Article 2.1(e) of the transparency obligations directive;
      (ii) if, and to the extent that, he is entitled to acquire, dispose of or exercise those voting rights in one or more of the cases mentioned in Article 10(a) to (h) of the transparency obligations directive;
      (iii) if he holds, directly or indirectly, a financial instrument which results in an entitlement to acquire the shares and is an Article 13 instrument, and
   (c) a person holds a “comparable instrument” in respect of voting shares if he holds, directly or indirectly, a financial instrument in relation to the shares which has similar economic effects to an Article 13 instrument (whether or not the financial instrument results in an entitlement to acquire the shares).

(2) Transparency rules under section 89A(4)(b) may make different provision for different descriptions of comparable instrument.

(3) For the purposes of sections 89A to 89E two or more persons may, at the same time, each be regarded as holding the same voting rights.

(4) In those sections—
   “Article 13 instrument” means a financial instrument of a type determined by the European Commission under Article 13(2)(a) of the transparency obligations directive;
   “UK market” means a market that is situated or operating in the United Kingdom;
   “voting shares” means shares—
      (a) to which voting rights are attached, and
      (b) which are shares of an issuer whose shares have been admitted to trading on a market (whether a regulated market or not).

89E Transparency rules: other supplementary provisions

(1) Transparency rules that require a person to make information public may include provision authorising the competent authority to make the information public in the event that the person fails to do so.

(2) The competent authority may make public any information notified to the authority in accordance with transparency rules.
(3) Transparency rules may make provision by reference to any provision of any rules made by the Panel on Takeovers and Mergers under Part 28 of the Company Law Reform Act 2006.

(4) Sections 89A to 89D and this section are without prejudice to any other power conferred by this Part to make Part 6 rules.

(2) The effectiveness for the purposes of section 155 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (consultation on proposed rules) of things done by the Financial Services Authority before this section comes into force with a view to making transparency rules (as defined in the provisions to be inserted in that Act by subsection (1) above) is not affected by the fact that those provisions were not then in force.

1231 Competent authority’s power to call for information

In Part 6 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (c. 8) after the sections inserted by section 1230 above insert—

“Power of competent authority to call for information

89F Competent authority’s power to call for information

(1) The competent authority may by notice in writing given to a person to whom this section applies require him—

(a) to provide specified information or information of a specified description, or

(b) to produce specified documents or documents of a specified description.

(2) This section applies to—

(a) an issuer of securities in respect of whom transparency rules have effect;

(b) a voteholder;

(c) an auditor of—

(i) an issuer to whom this section applies, or

(ii) a voteholder;

(d) a person who controls a voteholder;

(e) a person controlled by a voteholder;

(f) a director or other similar officer of an issuer to whom this section applies;

(g) a director or other similar officer of a voteholder or, where the affairs of a voteholder are managed by its members, a member of the voteholder.

(3) This section applies only to information and documents reasonably required in connection with the exercise by the competent authority of functions conferred on it by or under sections 89A to 89E (transparency rules).

(4) Information or documents required under this section must be provided or produced—

(a) before the end of such reasonable period as may be specified, and

(b) at such place as may be specified.
(5) If a person claims a lien on a document, its production under this section does not affect the lien.

89G Requirements in connection with call for information

(1) The competent authority may require any information provided under that section to be provided in such form as it may reasonably require.

(2) The competent authority may require—
   (a) any information provided, whether in a document or otherwise, to be verified in such manner as it may reasonably require;
   (b) any document produced to be authenticated in such manner as it may reasonably require.

(3) If a document is produced in response to a requirement imposed under this section, the competent authority may—
   (a) take copies of or extracts from the document; or
   (b) require the person producing the document, or any relevant person, to provide an explanation of the document.

(4) In subsection (3)(b) “relevant person”, in relation to a person who is required to produce a document, means a person who—
   (a) has been or is a director or controller of that person;
   (b) has been or is an auditor of that person;
   (c) has been or is an actuary, accountant or lawyer appointed or instructed by that person; or
   (d) has been or is an employee of that person.

(5) If a person who is required under this section to produce a document fails to do so, the competent authority may require him to state, to the best of his knowledge and belief, where the document is.

89H Power to call for information: supplementary provisions

(1) In sections 89F and 89G (power of competent authority to call for information)—
   “control” and “controlled” have the meaning given by subsection (2) below;
   “specified” means specified in the notice;
   “voteholder” means a person who—
   (a) holds voting rights in respect of any voting shares for the purposes of sections 89A to 89E (transparency rules), or
   (b) is treated as holding such rights by virtue of rules under section 89A(4)(b).

(2) For the purposes of those sections a person (“A”) controls another person (“B”) if—
   (a) A holds a majority of the voting rights in B,
   (b) A is a member of B and has the right to appoint or remove a majority of the members of the board of directors (or, if there is no such board, the equivalent management body) of B,
   (c) A is a member of B and controls alone, pursuant to an agreement with other shareholders or members, a majority of the voting rights in B, or
(d) A has the right to exercise, or actually exercises, dominant influence or control over B.

(3) For the purposes of subsection (2)(b)—
   (a) any rights of a person controlled by A, and
   (b) any rights of a person acting on behalf of A or a person controlled by A,

are treated as held by A.”.

1232 Powers exercisable in case of infringement of transparency obligation

In Part 6 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (c. 8), after the sections inserted by section 1231 above insert—

“Powers exercisable in case of infringement of transparency obligation

89I Public censure of issuer

(1) If the competent authority finds that an issuer of securities admitted to trading on a regulated market situated or operating in the United Kingdom is failing or has failed to comply with an applicable transparency obligation, it may publish a statement to that effect.

(2) If the competent authority proposes to publish a statement, it must give the issuer a warning notice setting out the terms of the proposed statement.

(3) If, after considering any representations made in response to the warning notice, the competent authority decides to make the proposed statement, it must give the issuer a decision notice setting out the terms of the statement.

(4) A notice under this section must inform the issuer of his right to refer the matter to the Tribunal (see section 89L) and give an indication of the procedure on such a reference.

(5) In this section “transparency obligation” means an obligation under—
   (a) a provision of transparency rules, or
   (b) any other provision made in accordance with the transparency obligations directive.

(6) In relation to an issuer whose home state is a member state other than the United Kingdom, any reference to an applicable transparency obligation must be read subject to section 100A(2).

89J Power to suspend or prohibit trading of securities

(1) This section applies to securities admitted to trading on a regulated market situated or operating in the United Kingdom.

(2) If the competent authority has reasonable grounds for suspecting that an applicable transparency obligation has been infringed by the issuer, it may require the market operator to suspend trading in the securities for a period not exceeding 10 days.

(3) If the competent authority has reasonable grounds for suspecting that an applicable transparency obligation has been infringed—
   (a) by an issuer whose home state is not the United Kingdom, or
(b) by voteholders of an issuer whose home state is the United Kingdom, it may require the market operator to prohibit trading in the securities.

(4) If the competent authority finds that an applicable transparency obligation has been infringed, it may require the market operator to prohibit trading in the securities.

(5) In this section “transparency obligation” means an obligation under—
(a) a provision contained in transparency rules, or
(b) any other provision made in accordance with the transparency obligations directive.

(6) In relation to an issuer whose home state is a member state other than the United Kingdom, any reference to an applicable transparency obligation must be read subject to section 100A(2).

89K Procedure under section 89J

(1) A requirement under section 89J takes effect—
(a) immediately, if the notice under subsection (2) states that that is the case;
(b) in any other case, on such date as may be specified in the notice.

(2) If the competent authority—
(a) proposes to exercise the powers in section 89J in relation to a person, or
(b) exercises any of those powers in relation to a person with immediate effect,
it must give that person written notice.

(3) The notice must—
(a) give details of the competent authority’s action or proposed action;
(b) state the competent authority’s reasons for taking the action in question and choosing the date on which it took effect or takes effect;
(c) inform the recipient that he may make representations to the competent authority within such period as may be specified by the notice (whether or not he had referred the matter to the Tribunal);
(d) inform him of the date on which the action took effect or takes effect;
(e) inform him of his right to refer the matter to the Tribunal (see section 89L) and give an indication of the procedure on such a reference.

(4) The competent authority may extend the period within which representations may be made to it.

(5) If, having considered any representations made to it, the competent authority decides to maintain, vary or revoke its earlier decision, it must give written notice to that effect to the person mentioned in subsection (2).
89L Right to refer matters to the Tribunal

A person—
(a) to whom a decision notice is given under section 89I (public censure), or
(b) to whom a notice is given under section 89K (procedure in connection with suspension or prohibition of trading),
may refer the matter to the Tribunal.”.

Other matters

1233 Corporate governance rules

In Part 6 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (c. 8), after the sections inserted by section 1232 above insert—

“Corporate governance

89M Corporate governance rules

(1) The competent authority may make rules (“corporate governance rules”)—
(a) for the purpose of implementing, enabling the implementation of or dealing with matters arising out of or related to, any Community obligation relating to the corporate governance of issuers who have requested or approved admission of their securities to trading on a regulated market;
(b) about corporate governance in relation to such issuers for the purpose of implementing, or dealing with matters arising out of or related to, any Community obligation.

(2) “Corporate governance”, in relation to an issuer, includes—
(a) the nature, constitution or functions of the organs of the issuer;
(b) the manner in which organs of the issuer conduct themselves;
(c) the requirements imposed on organs of the issuer;
(d) the relationship between the different organs of the issuer;
(e) the relationship between the organs of the issuer and the members of the issuer or holders of the issuer’s securities.

(3) The burdens and restrictions imposed by rules under this section on foreign-traded issuers must not be greater than the burdens and restrictions imposed on UK-traded issuers by—
(a) rules under this section, and
(b) listing rules.

(4) For this purpose—
“foreign-traded issuer” means an issuer who has requested or approved admission of the issuer’s securities to trading on a regulated market situated or operating outside the United Kingdom;
“UK-traded issuer” means an issuer who has requested or approved admission of the issuer’s securities to trading on a regulated market situated or operating in the United Kingdom.
(5) This section is without prejudice to any other power conferred by this Part to make Part 6 rules.”.

1234 Liability for false or misleading statements in certain publications

In Part 6 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (c. 8), after section 90 insert—

“90A Compensation for statements in certain publications

(1) The publications to which this section applies are any reports and statements published in response to a requirement imposed by a provision implementing Article 4, 5 or 6 of the transparency obligations directive.

(2) The issuer of securities traded on a regulated UK market is liable to pay compensation to a person who has—
   (a) acquired such securities issued by it, and
   (b) suffered loss in respect of them as a result of—
      (i) any untrue or misleading statement in a publication to which this section applies, or
      (ii) the omission from any such publication of any matter required to be included in it.

(3) The issuer is so liable only if a person discharging managerial responsibilities within the issuer in relation to the publication—
   (a) knew the statement to be untrue or misleading or was reckless as to whether it was untrue or misleading, or
   (b) knew the omission to be dishonest concealment of a material fact.

(4) A loss is not regarded as suffered as a result of the statement or omission in the publication unless the person suffering it acquired the relevant securities—
   (a) in reliance on the information in the publication, and
   (b) at a time when, and in circumstances in which, it was reasonable for him to rely on that information.

(5) Except as mentioned in subsection (7)—
   (a) the issuer is not subject to any other liability than that provided for by this section in respect of loss suffered as a result of reliance by any person on—
      (i) an untrue or misleading statement in a publication to which this section applies, or
      (ii) the omission from any such publication of any matter required to be included in it, and
   (b) a person other than the issuer is not subject to any liability, other than to the issuer, in respect of any such loss.

(6) Any reference in subsection (5) to a person being subject to a liability includes a reference to another person being entitled as against him to be granted any civil remedy or to rescind or repudiate an agreement.

(7) This section does not affect—
(a) the powers conferred by section 382 and 384 (powers of the court to make a restitution order and of the Authority to require restitution);
(b) liability for a civil penalty;
(c) liability for a criminal offence.

(8) For the purposes of this section—
(a) the following are persons “discharging managerial responsibilities” in relation to a publication—
   (i) any director of the issuer (or person occupying the position of director, by whatever name called),
   (ii) in the case of an issuer whose affairs are managed by its members, any member of the issuer,
   (iii) any senior executive of the issuer having responsibilities in relation to the publication;
(b) “regulated UK market” means a regulated market situated or operating in the United Kingdom;
(c) references to the acquisition by a person of securities include his contracting to acquire them or any interest in them.”.

1235 Exercise of powers where UK is host member state

In Part 6 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (c. 8), after section 100 insert—

“100A Exercise of powers where UK is host member state

(1) This section applies to the exercise by the competent authority of any power under this Part exercisable in case of infringement of—
   (a) a provision of prospectus rules or any other provision made in accordance with the prospectus directive, or
   (b) a provision of transparency rules or any other provision made in accordance with the transparency obligations directive, in relation to an issuer whose home state is a member state other than the United Kingdom.

(2) The competent authority may act in such a case only in respect of the infringement of a provision required by the relevant directive. Any reference to an applicable provision or applicable transparency obligation shall be read accordingly.

(3) If the authority finds that there has been such an infringement, it must give a notice to that effect to the competent authority of the person’s home state requesting it—
   (a) to take all appropriate measures for the purpose of ensuring that the person remedies the situation that has given rise to the notice, and
   (b) to inform the authority of the measures it proposes to take or has taken or the reasons for not taking such measures.

(4) The authority may not act further unless satisfied—
   (a) that the competent authority of the person’s home state has failed or refused to take measures for the purpose mentioned in subsection (3)(a), or
(b) that the measures taken by that authority have proved inadequate for that purpose.
This does not affect exercise of the powers under section 87K(2), 87L(2) or (3) or 89J(2) or (3) (powers to protect market).

(5) If the authority is so satisfied, it must, after informing the competent authority of the person’s home state, take all appropriate measures to protect investors.

(6) In such a case the authority must inform the Commission informed of the measures at the earliest opportunity.”.

1236 Transparency obligations and related matters: minor and consequential amendments

(1) Schedule 15 to this Act makes minor and consequential amendments in connection with the provision made by this Part.

(2) In that Schedule—
   Part 1 contains amendments of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (c. 8);
   Part 2 contains amendments of the Companies (Audit, Investigations and Community Enterprise) Act 2004 (c. 27).

1237 Corporate governance regulations

(1) The Secretary of State may make regulations—
   (a) for the purpose of implementing, enabling the implementation of or dealing with matters arising out of or related to, any Community obligation relating to the corporate governance of issuers who have requested or approved admission of their securities to trading on a regulated market;
   (b) about corporate governance in relation to such issuers for the purpose of implementing, or dealing with matters arising out of or related to, any Community obligation.

(2) “Corporate governance”, in relation to an issuer, includes—
   (a) the nature, constitution or functions of the organs of the issuer;
   (b) the manner in which organs of the issuer conduct themselves;
   (c) the requirements imposed on organs of the issuer;
   (d) the relationship between different organs of the issuer;
   (e) the relationship between the organs of the issuer and the members of the issuer or holders of the issuer’s securities.

(3) The regulations may—
   (a) make provision by reference to any specified code on corporate governance that may be issued from time to time by a specified body;
   (b) create new criminal offences (subject to subsection (4));
   (c) make provision excluding liability in damages in respect of things done or omitted for the purposes of, or in connection with, the carrying on, or purported carrying on, of any specified activities.

“Specified” here means specified in the regulations.
(4) The regulations may not create a criminal offence punishable by a greater penalty than—
   (a) on indictment, a fine;
   (b) on summary conviction, a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum or (if calculated on a daily basis) £100 a day.

(5) Regulations under this section are subject to negative resolution procedure.

(6) In this section “issuer”, “securities” and “regulated market” have the same meaning as in Part 6 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (c. 8).

**PART 44**

**MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**

**1238 Grants to bodies concerned with actuarial standards etc**

(1) Section 16 of the Companies (Audit, Investigations and Community Enterprise) Act 2004 (c. 27) (grants to bodies concerned with accounting standards etc) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (2) (matters carried on by bodies eligible for grants) for paragraph (l) substitute—
   “(l) issuing standards to be applied in actuarial work;
   (m) issuing standards in respect of matters to be contained in reports or other communications required to be produced or made by actuaries or in accordance with standards within paragraph (l);
   (n) investigating departures from standards within paragraph (l) or (m);
   (o) taking steps to secure compliance with standards within paragraph (l) or (m);
   (p) carrying out investigations into public interest cases arising in connection with the performance of actuarial functions by members of professional actuarial bodies;
   (q) holding disciplinary hearings relating to members of professional actuarial bodies following the conclusion of investigations within paragraph (p);
   (r) deciding whether (and, if so, what) disciplinary action should be taken against members of professional actuarial bodies to whom hearings within paragraph (q) related;
   (s) supervising the exercise by professional actuarial bodies of regulatory functions in relation to their members;
   (t) overseeing or directing any of the matters mentioned above.”.

(3) In subsection (5) (definitions) at the appropriate places insert—
   ““professional actuarial body” means—
   (a) the Institute of Actuaries, or
   (b) the Faculty of Actuaries in Scotland,”.
and the “members” of a professional actuarial body include persons who, although not members of the body, are subject to its rules in performing actuarial functions;”

“regulatory functions”, in relation to professional actuarial bodies, means any of the following—

(a) investigatory or disciplinary functions exercised by such bodies in relation to the performance by their members of actuarial functions,

(b) the setting by such bodies of standards in relation to the performance by their members of actuarial functions, and

(c) the determining by such bodies of requirements in relation to the education and training of their members;”.

1239 Levy to pay expenses of bodies concerned with actuarial standards etc

(1) Section 17 of the Companies (Audit, Investigations and Community Enterprise) Act 2004 (c. 27) (levy to pay expenses of bodies concerned with accounting standards etc) is amended in accordance with subsections (2) to (5).

(2) In subsection (3)(a) after “to which” insert “, or persons within subsection (3A) to whom,“.

(3) After subsection (3) insert—

“(3A) The following persons are within this subsection—

(a) the administrators of a public service pension scheme (within the meaning of section 1 of the Pension Schemes Act 1993);

(b) the trustees or managers of an occupational or personal pension scheme (within the meaning of that section).”.

(4) After subsection (4)(b) insert—

“(c) make different provision for different cases.”.

(5) After subsection (12) insert—

“(13) If a draft of any regulations to which subsection (10) applies would, apart from this subsection, be treated for the purposes of the standing orders of either House of Parliament as a hybrid instrument, it is to proceed in that House as if it were not such an instrument.”.

(6) The above amendments have effect in relation to any exercise of the power to make regulations under section 17 of the Companies (Audit, Investigations and Community Enterprise) Act 2004 after this section comes into force, regardless of when the expenses to be met by the levy in respect of which the regulations are made were incurred.

(7) In Schedule 3 to the Pensions Act 2004 (c. 35) (disclosure of information held by the Pensions Regulator), in the entry relating to the Secretary of State, in the second column, for “or” at the end of paragraph (g) substitute—

“(ga) Section 17 of the Companies (Audit, Investigations and Community Enterprise) Act 2004 (levy to pay expenses of bodies concerned with accounting standards, actuarial standards etc), or”.

5 10 15 20 25 30 35 40 45
1240 Application of provisions to Scotland and Northern Ireland

(1) Section 16 of the Companies (Audit, Investigations and Community Enterprise) Act 2004 (grants to bodies concerned with accounting standards etc) is amended as follows.

(2) For subsection (6) (application of section to Scotland) substitute—

“(6) In their application to Scotland, subsection (2)(a) to (t) are to be read as referring only to matters provision relating to which would be outside the legislative competence of the Scottish Parliament.”.

(3) In subsection (2) in paragraph (c), after “1985 (c. 6)” insert “or the 1986 Order”.

(4) In subsection (5)—

(a) in the definition of “company” after “1985 (c. 6)” insert “or the 1986 Order”,

(b) in the definition of “subsidiary” after “1985” insert “or Article 4 of the 1986 Order”, and

(c) after that definition insert—

“the 1986 Order” means the Companies (Northern Ireland) Order 1986 (S.I. 1986/1032 (N.I. 6)).”.

(5) In section 66 of that Act (extent), in subsection (2) (provisions extending to Northern Ireland, as well as England and Wales and Scotland) for “17” substitute “16 to 18”.

1241 Power to require information about exercise of voting rights

(1) The Treasury or the Secretary of State may make provision by regulations requiring institutions to which this section applies to provide information about the exercise of voting rights attached to shares to which this section applies.

(2) This power is exercisable in accordance with—

section 1242 (institutions to which information provisions apply),

section 1243 (shares to which information provisions apply), and

section 1244 (obligations with respect to provision of information).

(3) In this section and the sections mentioned above—

(a) references to a person acting on behalf of an institution include—

(i) any person to whom authority has been delegated by the institution to take decisions as to any matter relevant to the subject matter of the regulations, and

(ii) such other persons as may be specified; and

(b) “specified” means specified in the regulations.

(4) The obligation imposed by regulations under this section is enforceable by civil proceedings brought by—

(a) any person to whom the information should have been provided, or

(b) a specified regulatory authority.
(5) Regulations under this section may make different provision for different descriptions of institution, different descriptions of shares and for other different circumstances.

(6) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

1242 Institutions to which information provisions apply

(1) The institutions to which section 1241 applies are—
   (a) unit trust schemes within the meaning of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (c. 8) in respect of which an order is in force under section 243 of that Act;
   (b) open-ended investment companies incorporated by virtue of regulations under section 262 of that Act;
   (c) companies approved for the purposes of section 842 of the Income and Corporation Taxes Act 1988 (c. 1) (investment trusts);
   (d) pension schemes as defined in section 1(5) of the Pension Schemes Act 1993 (c. 48) or the Pension Schemes (Northern Ireland) Act 1993 (c. 49);
   (e) undertakings authorised under the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 to carry on long-term insurance business (that is, the activity of effecting or carrying out contracts of long term insurance within the meaning of the Financial Services and Markets (Regulated Activities) Order 2001);
   (f) collective investment schemes that are recognised by virtue of section 270 of that Act (schemes authorised in designated countries or territories).

(2) Regulations under that section may—
   (a) provide that the section applies to other descriptions of institution;
   (b) provide that the section does not apply to a specified description of institution.

(3) The regulations must specify by whom, in the case of any description of institution, the duty imposed by the regulations is to be fulfilled.

1243 Shares to which information provisions apply

(1) The shares to which section 1241 applies are shares—
   (a) of a description traded on a specified market, and
   (b) in which the institution has, or is taken to have, an interest.

Regulations under that section may provide that the section does not apply to shares of a specified description.

(2) For this purpose an institution has an interest in shares if the shares, or a depositary certificate in respect of them, are held by it, or on its behalf.
   A “depositary certificate” means an instrument conferring rights (other than options)—
   (a) in respect of shares held by another person, and
   (b) the transfer of which may be effected without the consent of that person.

(3) Where an institution has an interest—
   (a) in a specified description of collective investment scheme (within the meaning of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (c. 8)), or
(b) in any other specified description of scheme or collective investment vehicle,
it is taken to have an interest in any shares in which that scheme or vehicle has
or is taken to have an interest.

(4) For this purpose a scheme or vehicle is taken to have an interest in shares if it
would be regarded as having such an interest in accordance with subsection (2)
if it was an institution to which section 1241 applied.

1244 Obligations with respect to provision of information

(1) Regulations under section 1241 may require the provision of specified
information about—
(a) the exercise or non-exercise of voting rights by the institution or any
person acting on its behalf,
(b) any instructions given by the institution or any person acting on its
behalf as to the exercise or non-exercise of voting rights, and
(c) any delegation by the institution or any person acting on its behalf of
any functions in relation to the exercise or non-exercise of voting rights
or the giving of such instructions.

(2) The regulations may require information to be provided in respect of specified
occasions or specified periods.

(3) Where instructions are given to act on the recommendations or advice of
another person, the regulations may require the provision of information about
what recommendations or advice were given.

(4) The regulations may require information to be provided—
(a) in such manner as may be specified, and
(b) to such persons as may be specified, or to the public, or both.

(5) The regulations may provide—
(a) that an institution may discharge its obligations under the regulations
by referring to information disclosed by a person acting on its behalf, and
(b) that in such a case it is sufficient, where that other person acts on behalf
of more than one institution, that the reference is to information given
in aggregated form, that is—
(i) relating to the exercise or non-exercise by that person of voting
rights on behalf of more than one institution, or
(ii) relating to the instructions given by that person in respect of the
exercise or non-exercise of voting rights on behalf of more than
one institution, or
(iii) relating to the delegation by that person of functions in relation
to the exercise or non-exercise of voting rights, or the giving of
instructions in respect of the exercise or non-exercise of voting
rights, on behalf of more than one institution.

(6) References in this section to instructions are to instructions of any description,
whether general or specific, whether binding or not and whether or not acted
upon.
Disclosure of information under the Enterprise Act 2002

1245 Disclosure of information under the Enterprise Act 2002

In Part 9 of the Enterprise Act 2002 (c. 40) (information), after section 241 insert—

“241A Civil proceedings

(1) A public authority which holds prescribed information to which section 237 applies may disclose that information to any person—

(a) for the purposes of, or in connection with, prescribed civil proceedings (including prospective proceedings) in the United Kingdom, or

(b) for the purposes of obtaining legal advice in relation to such proceedings, or

(c) otherwise for the purposes of establishing, enforcing or defending legal rights that are or may be the subject of such proceedings.

(2) Subsection (1) does not apply to—

(a) information which comes to a public authority in connection with an investigation under Part 4, 5 or 6 of the 1973 Act or under section 11 of the Competition Act 1980;

(b) competition information within the meaning of section 351 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000;

(c) information which comes to a public authority in connection with an investigation under Part 3 or 4 or section 174 of this Act;

(d) information which comes to a public authority in connection with an investigation under the Competition Act 1998 (c. 41).

(3) In subsection (1) “prescribed” means prescribed by order of the Secretary of State.

(4) An order under this section—

(a) may prescribe information, or civil proceedings, for the purposes of this section by reference to such factors as appear to the Secretary of State to be appropriate;

(b) may prescribe for the purposes of this section all information, or civil proceedings, or all information or civil proceedings not falling within one or more specified exceptions;

(c) must be made by statutory instrument subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.

(5) Information disclosed under this section must not be used by the person to whom it is disclosed for any purpose other than those specified in subsection (1).”.

 Expenses of winding up

1246 Payment of expenses of winding up

(1) In Chapter 8 of Part 4 of the Insolvency Act 1986 (c. 45) (winding up of companies: provisions of general application), before section 176A (under the
heading “Property subject to floating charge”) insert—

“176ZA  Payment of expenses of winding up (England and Wales)

(1) The expenses of winding up in England and Wales, so far as the assets of the company available for payment of general creditors are insufficient to meet them, have priority over any claims to property comprised in or subject to any floating charge created by the company and shall be paid out of any such property accordingly.

(2) In subsection (1)—
   (a) the reference to assets of the company available for payment of general creditors does not include any amount made available under section 176A(2)(a);
   (b) the reference to claims to property comprised in or subject to a floating charge is to the claims of—
      (i) the holders of debentures secured by, or holders of, the floating charge, and
      (ii) any preferential creditors entitled to be paid out of that property in priority to them.

(3) Provision may be made by rules restricting the application of subsection (1), in such circumstances as may be prescribed, to expenses authorised or approved—
   (a) by the holders of debentures secured by, or holders of, the floating charge and by any preferential creditors entitled to be paid in priority to them, or
   (b) by the court.

(4) References in this section to the expenses of the winding up are to all expenses properly incurred in the winding up, including the remuneration of the liquidator.”.

(2) In Chapter 8 of Part 5 of the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989 (S.I. 1989/2405 (N.I. 19)) (winding up of companies: provisions of general application), before Article 150A (under the heading “Property subject to floating charge”) insert—

“150ZA  Payment of expenses of winding up

(1) The expenses of winding up, so far as the assets of the company available for payment of general creditors are insufficient to meet them, have priority over any claims to property comprised in or subject to any floating charge created by the company and shall be paid out of any such property accordingly.

(2) In paragraph (1)—
   (a) the reference to assets of the company available for payment of general creditors does not include any amount made available under Article 150A(2)(a);
   (b) the reference to claims to property comprised in or subject to a floating charge is to the claims of—
      (i) the holders of debentures secured by, or holders of, the floating charge, and
      (ii) any preferential creditors entitled to be paid out of that property in priority to them.
(3) Provision may be made by rules restricting the application of paragraph (1), in such circumstances as may be prescribed, to expenses authorised or approved—
   (a) by the holders of debentures secured by, or holders of, the floating charge and by any preferential creditors entitled to be paid in priority to them, or
   (b) by the Court.

(4) References in this Article to the expenses of the winding up are to all expenses properly incurred in the winding up, including the remuneration of the liquidator.”.

1247 Amendment of memorandum or articles of commonhold association

In paragraph 3(1) of Schedule 3 to the Commonhold and Leasehold Reform Act 2002 (c. 15) (alteration of memorandum or articles by commonhold association to be of no effect until altered version registered with Land Registry) for “An alteration of the memorandum or articles of association” substitute “Where a commonhold association alters its memorandum or articles at a time when the land specified in its memorandum is commonhold land, the alteration”.

PART 45

NORTHERN IRELAND

1248 Extension of Companies Acts to Northern Ireland

(1) The Companies Acts as defined by this Act (see section 2) extend to Northern Ireland.


1249 Extension of GB enactments relating to SEs

(1) The enactments in force in Great Britain relating to SEs extend to Northern Ireland.

(2) The following enactments shall cease to have effect accordingly—
   (a) the European Public Limited-Liability Company Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2004 (SR 2004/417), and
   (b) the European Public Limited-Liability Company (Fees) Regulations (Northern Ireland) 2004 (SR 2004/418).

(3) In this section “SE” means a European Public Limited-Liability Company (or Societas Europaea) within the meaning of Council Regulation 2157/2001/EC of 8 October 2001 on the Statute for a European Company.
1250 Extension of GB enactments relating to certain other forms of business organisation

(1) The enactments in force in Great Britain relating to—
    (a) limited liability partnerships,
    (b) limited partnerships,
    (c) open-ended investment companies, and
    (d) European Economic Interest Groupings,
extend to Northern Ireland.

(2) The following enactments shall cease to have effect accordingly—
    (a) the Limited Liability Partnerships Act (Northern Ireland) 2002 (c. 12 (N. I.));
    (b) the Limited Partnerships Act 1907 (c. 24) as it formerly had effect in Northern Ireland;
    (c) the Open-Ended Investment Companies Act (Northern Ireland) 2002 (c. 13 (N.I.));
    (d) the European Economic Interest Groupings Regulations (Northern Ireland) 1989 (SR 1989/216).

1251 Extension of enactments relating to business names

(1) The provisions of Part 41 of this Act (business names) extend to Northern Ireland.

(2) The Business Names (Northern Ireland) Order 1986 (S.I. 1986/1033 (N.I. 7)) shall cease to have effect accordingly.

PART 46

GENERAL SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISIONS

Regulations and orders

1252 Regulations and orders: statutory instrument

Except as otherwise provided, regulations and orders under this Act shall be made by statutory instrument.

1253 Regulations and orders: negative resolution procedure

Where regulations or orders under this Act are subject to “negative resolution procedure” the statutory instrument containing the regulations or order shall be subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.

1254 Regulations and orders: affirmative resolution procedure

Where regulations or orders under this Act are subject to “affirmative resolution procedure” the regulations or order must not be made unless a draft of the statutory instrument containing them has been laid before Parliament and approved by a resolution of each House of Parliament.
1255 Regulations and orders: approval after being made

(1) Regulations or orders under this Act that are subject to “approval after being made”—
   (a) must be laid before Parliament after being made, and
   (b) cease to have effect at the end of 28 days beginning with the day on which they were made unless during that period they are approved by resolution of each House.

(2) In reckoning the period of 28 days no account shall be taken of any time during which Parliament is dissolved or prorogued or during which both Houses are adjourned for more than four days.

(3) The regulations or order ceasing to have effect does not affect—
   (a) anything previously done under them or it, or
   (b) the making of new regulations or a new order.

1256 Regulations and orders: supplementary

(1) Regulations or orders under this Act may—
   (a) make different provision for different cases or circumstances,
   (b) include supplementary, incidental and consequential provision, and
   (c) make transitional provision and savings.

(2) Any provision that may be made by regulations under this Act may be made by order; and any provision that may be made by order under this Act may be made by regulations.

(3) Any provision that may be made by regulations or order under this Act for which no Parliamentary procedure is prescribed may be made by regulations or order subject to negative or affirmative resolution procedure.

(4) Any provision that may be made by regulations or order under this Act subject to negative resolution procedure may be made by regulations or order subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

Meaning of "enactment"

1257 Meaning of “enactment”

In this Act, unless the context otherwise requires, “enactment” includes—

(a) an enactment contained in subordinate legislation within the meaning of the Interpretation Act 1978 (c. 30),
(b) an enactment contained in, or in an instrument made under, an Act of the Scottish Parliament, and
(c) an enactment contained in, or in an instrument made under, Northern Ireland legislation within the meaning of the Interpretation Act 1978 (c. 30).
Consequential and transitional provisions

1258 Power to make consequential amendments etc

(1) The Secretary of State or the Treasury may by order make such provision amending, repealing or revoking any enactment to which this section applies as they consider necessary or expedient in consequence of any provision made by or under this Act.

(2) This section applies to—
   (a) any enactment passed or made before the passing of this Act,
   (b) any enactment contained in this Act or in subordinate legislation made under it, and
   (c) any enactment passed or made before the end of the session after that in which this Act is passed.

(3) Without prejudice to the generality of the power conferred by subsection (1), orders under this section may—
   (a) make provision extending to other forms of organisation any provision made by or under this Act in relation to companies, or
   (b) make provision corresponding to that made by or under this Act in relation to companies,
   in either case with such adaptations or other modifications as appear to the Secretary of State or the Treasury to be necessary or expedient.

(4) The references in subsection (3) to provision made by this Act include provision conferring power to make provision by regulations, orders or other subordinate legislation.

(5) Amendments and repeals made under this section are additional, and without prejudice, to those made by or under any other provision of this Act.

(6) Orders under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

1259 Repeals

The enactments specified in Schedule 16, which include enactments that are no longer of practical utility, are repealed to the extent specified.

1260 Power to make transitional provision and savings

(1) The Secretary of State or the Treasury may by order make such transitional provision and savings as they consider necessary or expedient in connection with the commencement of any provision made by or under this Act.

(2) An order may, in particular, make such adaptations of provisions brought into force as appear to be necessary or expedient in consequence of other provisions of this Act not yet having come into force.

(3) Transitional provision and savings made under this section are additional, and without prejudice, to those made by or under any other provision of this Act.

(4) Orders under this section are subject to negative resolution procedure.
1261 Continuity of the law

(1) This section applies where any provision of this Act re-enacts (with or without modification) an enactment repealed by this Act.

(2) The repeal and re-enactment does not affect the continuity of the law.

(3) Anything done (including subordinate legislation made), or having effect as if done, under or for the purposes of the repealed provision that could have been done under or for the purposes of the corresponding provision of this Act, if in force or effective immediately before the commencement of that corresponding provision, has effect thereafter as if done under or for the purposes of that corresponding provision.

(4) Any reference (express or implied) in this Act or any other enactment, instrument or document to a provision of this Act shall be construed (so far as the context permits) as including, as respects times, circumstances or purposes in relation to which the corresponding repealed provision had effect, a reference to that corresponding provision.

(5) Any reference (express or implied) in any enactment, instrument or document to a repealed provision shall be construed (so far as the context permits), as respects times, circumstances and purposes in relation to which the corresponding provision of this Act has effect, as being or (according to the context) including a reference to the corresponding provision of this Act.

(6) This section has effect subject to any specific transitional provision or saving contained in this Act.

(7) References in this section to this Act include subordinate legislation made under this Act.

(8) In this section “subordinate legislation” has the same meaning as in the Interpretation Act 1978 (c. 30).

PART 47

FINAL PROVISIONS

1262 Short title

The short title of this Act is the Companies Act 2006.

1263 Extent

Except as otherwise provided (or the context otherwise requires), the provisions of this Act extend to the whole of the United Kingdom.

1264 Commencement

(1) The following provisions come into force on the day this Act is passed—

(a) Part 43 (transparency obligations and related matters), except the amendment in paragraph 11(2) of Schedule 15 of the definition of “regulated market” in Part 6 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (c. 8),

(b) in Part 44 (miscellaneous provisions)—

section 1238 (bodies concerned with actuarial standards), and
section 1240 (application of provisions in Scotland and Northern Ireland),
(c) Part 46 (general supplementary provisions), except section 1259 and Schedule 16 (repeals), and
(d) this Part.

(2) The other provisions of this Act come into force on such day as may be appointed by order of the Secretary of State or the Treasury.
SCHEDULES

SCHEDULE 1

Sections 254 and 255

CONNECTED PERSONS: REFERENCES TO AN INTEREST IN SHARES OR DEBENTURES

Introduction

1 (1) The provisions of this Schedule have effect for the interpretation of references in sections 254 and 255 (directors connected with or controlling a body corporate) to an interest in shares or debentures.

(2) The provisions are expressed in relation to shares but apply to debentures as they apply to shares.

General provisions

2 (1) A reference to an interest in shares includes any interest of any kind whatsoever in shares.

(2) Any restraints or restrictions to which the exercise of any right attached to the interest is or may be subject shall be disregarded.

(3) It is immaterial that the shares in which a person has an interest are not identifiable.

(4) Persons having a joint interest in shares are deemed each of them to have that interest.

Rights to acquire shares

3 (1) A person is taken to have an interest in shares if he enters into a contract to acquire them.

(2) A person is taken to have an interest in shares if—
   (a) he has a right to call for delivery of the shares to himself or to his order, or
   (b) he has a right to acquire an interest in shares or is under an obligation to take an interest in shares, whether the right or obligation is conditional or absolute.

(3) Rights or obligations to subscribe for shares are not to be taken for the purposes of sub-paragraph (2) to be rights to acquire or obligations to take an interest in shares.

(4) A person ceases to have an interest in shares by virtue of this paragraph—
   (a) on the shares being delivered to another person at his order—
      (i) in fulfilment of a contract for their acquisition by him, or
      (ii) in satisfaction of a right of his to call for their delivery;
(b) on a failure to deliver the shares in accordance with the terms of such a contract or on which such a right falls to be satisfied;
(c) on the lapse of his right to call for the delivery of shares.

Right to exercise or control exercise of rights

4 (1) A person is taken to have an interest in shares if, not being the registered holder, he is entitled—
   (a) to exercise any right conferred by the holding of the shares, or
   (b) to control the exercise of any such right.

(2) For this purpose a person is taken to be entitled to exercise or control the exercise of a right conferred by the holding of shares if he—
   (a) has a right (whether subject to conditions or not) the exercise of which would make him so entitled, or
   (b) is under an obligation (whether or not so subject) the fulfilment of which would make him so entitled.

(3) A person is not by virtue of this paragraph taken to be interested in shares by reason only that—
   (a) he has been appointed a proxy to exercise any of the rights attached to the shares, or
   (b) he has been appointed by a body corporate to act as its representative at any meeting of a company or of any class of its members.

Bodies corporate

5 (1) A person is taken to be interested in shares if a body corporate is interested in them and—
   (a) the body corporate or its directors are accustomed to act in accordance with his directions or instructions, or
   (b) he is entitled to exercise or control the exercise of more than one-half of the voting power at general meetings of the body corporate.

(2) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (1)(b) where—
   (a) a person is entitled to exercise or control the exercise of more than one-half of the voting power at general meetings of a body corporate, and
   (b) that body corporate is entitled to exercise or control the exercise of any of the voting power at general meetings of another body corporate,

   the voting power mentioned in paragraph (b) above is taken to be exercisable by that person.

Trusts

6 (1) Where an interest in shares is comprised in property held on trust, every beneficiary of the trust is taken to have an interest in shares, subject as follows.

(2) So long as a person is entitled to receive, during the lifetime of himself or another, income from trust property comprising shares, an interest in the shares in reversion or remainder or (as regards Scotland) in fee shall be disregarded.
(3) A person is treated as not interested in shares if and so long as he holds them—
   (a) under the law in force in any part of the United Kingdom, as a bare trustee or as a custodian trustee, or
   (b) under the law in force in Scotland, as a simple trustee.

(4) There shall be disregarded any interest of a person subsisting by virtue of—
   (a) an authorised unit trust scheme (within the meaning of section 237 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (c. 8));
   (b) a scheme made under section 22 or 22A of the Charities Act 1960 (c. 58), section 25 of the Charities Act (Northern Ireland) 1964 (c. 33 (N.I.)) or section 24 or 25 of the Charities Act 1993 (c. 10), section 11 of the Trustee Investments Act 1961 (c. 62) or section 42 of the Administration of Justice Act 1982 (c. 53); or
   (c) the scheme set out in the Schedule to the Church Funds Investment Measure 1958 (1958 No. 1).

(5) There shall be disregarded any interest—
   (a) of the Church of Scotland General Trustees or of the Church of Scotland Trust in shares held by them;
   (b) of any other person in shares held by those Trustees or that Trust otherwise than as simple trustees.

“The Church of Scotland General Trustees” are the body incorporated by the order confirmed by the Church of Scotland (General Trustees) Order Confirmation Act 1921 (1921 c. xxv), and “the Church of Scotland Trust” is the body incorporated by the order confirmed by the Church of Scotland Trust Order Confirmation Act 1932 (1932 c. xxi).

SCHEDULE 2

SPECIFIED PERSONS, DESCRIPTIONS OF DISCLOSURES ETC FOR THE PURPOSES OF SECTION 915

PART 1

SPECIFIED PERSONS

1. The Secretary of State.
2. The Department of Enterprise, Trade and Investment for Northern Ireland.
3. The Treasury.
5. The Financial Services Authority.
6. The Commissioners for Her Majesty’s Revenue and Customs.
7. The Lord Advocate.
8. The Director of Public Prosecutions.
9. The Director of Public Prosecutions for Northern Ireland.
10. A constable.
A procurator fiscal.
The Scottish Ministers.

**PART 2**

**SPECIFIED DESCRIPTIONS OF DISCLOSURES**

13 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting a person authorised under section 465 of this Act (persons authorised to apply to court) to exercise his functions.

Until the coming into force of section 465, the reference to that section is to be read as a reference to section 245C of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6).

14 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting an inspector appointed under Part 14 of the Companies Act 1985 (investigation of companies and their affairs, etc) to exercise his functions.

15 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting a person authorised under section 447 of the Companies Act 1985 (power to require production of documents) or section 84 of the Companies Act 1989 (c. 40) (exercise of powers by officer etc) to exercise his functions.

16 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting a person appointed under section 167 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (c. 8) (general investigations) to conduct an investigation to exercise his functions.

17 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting a person appointed under section 168 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (investigations in particular cases) to conduct an investigation to exercise his functions.

18 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting a person appointed under section 169(1)(b) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (investigation in support of overseas regulator) to conduct an investigation to exercise his functions.

19 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting the body corporate responsible for administering the scheme referred to in section 225 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (the ombudsman scheme) to exercise its functions.

20 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting a person appointed under paragraph 4 (the panel of ombudsmen) or 5 (the Chief Ombudsman) of Schedule 17 to the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 to exercise his functions.

21 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting a person appointed under regulations made under section 262(1) and (2)(k) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (investigations into open-ended investment companies) to conduct an investigation to exercise his functions.

22 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting a person appointed under section 284 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (investigations into affairs of certain collective investment schemes) to conduct an investigation to exercise his functions.

23 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting the investigator appointed under paragraph 7 of Schedule 1 to the Financial Services and
Markets Act 2000 (arrangements for investigation of complaints) to exercise his functions.

24 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting a person appointed by the Treasury to hold an inquiry into matters relating to financial services (including an inquiry under section 15 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (c. 8)) to exercise his functions.

25 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting the Secretary of State or the Treasury to exercise any of their functions under any of the following—
   (a) the Companies Acts;
   (b) Part 5 of the Criminal Justice Act 1993 (c. 36) (insider dealing);
   (c) the Insolvency Act 1986 (c. 45);
   (d) the Company Directors Disqualification Act 1986 (c. 46);
   (e) Part 42 of this Act (statutory auditors);
   (f) Part 3 (investigations and powers to obtain information) or 7 (financial markets and insolvency) of the Companies Act 1989 (c. 40);
   (g) the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000.

Until the coming into force of Part 42 of this Act, the reference to it in paragraph (e) is to be read as a reference to Part 2 of the Companies Act 1989.

26 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting the Scottish Ministers to exercise their functions under the enactments relating to insolvency.

27 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting the Department of Enterprise, Trade and Investment for Northern Ireland to exercise any powers conferred on it by the enactments relating to companies or insolvency.

28 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting a person appointed or authorised by the Department of Enterprise, Trade and Investment for Northern Ireland under the enactments relating to companies or insolvency to exercise his functions.

29 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting the Pensions Regulator to exercise the functions conferred on it by or by virtue of any of the following—
   (a) the Pension Schemes Act 1993 (c. 48);
   (b) the Pensions Act 1995 (c. 26);
   (c) the Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 (c. 30);
   (d) the Pensions Act 2004 (c. 35);
   (e) any enactment in force in Northern Ireland corresponding to any of those enactments.

30 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting the Board of the Pension Protection Fund to exercise the functions conferred on it by or by virtue of Part 2 of the Pensions Act 2004 or any enactment in force in Northern Ireland corresponding to that Part.

31 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting—
   (a) the Bank of England,
   (b) the European Central Bank, or
   (c) the central bank of any country or territory outside the United Kingdom,
to exercise its functions.
32 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting the Commissioners for Her Majesty’s Revenue and Customs to exercise their functions.

33 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting organs of the Society of Lloyd’s (being organs constituted by or under the Lloyd’s Act 1982 (c. xiv)) to exercise their functions under or by virtue of the Lloyd’s Acts 1871 to 1982.

34 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting the Office of Fair Trading to exercise its functions under any of the following—
   (a) the Fair Trading Act 1973 (c. 41);
   (b) the Consumer Credit Act 1974 (c. 39);
   (c) the Estate Agents Act 1979 (c. 38);
   (d) the Competition Act 1980 (c. 21);
   (e) the Competition Act 1998 (c. 41);
   (f) the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (c. 8);
   (g) the Enterprise Act 2002 (c. 40);
   (h) the Control of Misleading Advertisements Regulations 1988 (S.I. 1988/915);
   (i) the Unfair Terms in Consumer Contracts Regulations 1999 (S.I. 1999/2083).

35 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting the Competition Commission to exercise its functions under any of the following—
   (a) the Fair Trading Act 1973;
   (b) the Competition Act 1980;
   (c) the Competition Act 1998;
   (d) the Enterprise Act 2002.

36 A disclosure with a view to the institution of, or otherwise for the purposes of, proceedings before the Competition Appeal Tribunal.

37 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting an enforcer under Part 8 of the Enterprise Act 2002 (enforcement of consumer legislation) to exercise its functions under that Part.

38 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting the Charity Commission to exercise its functions.

39 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting the Attorney General to exercise his functions in connection with charities.

40 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting the National Lottery Commission to exercise its functions under sections 5 to 10 (licensing) and 15 (power of Secretary of State to require information) of the National Lottery etc. Act 1993 (c. 39).

41 A disclosure by the National Lottery Commission to the National Audit Office for the purpose of enabling or assisting the Comptroller and Auditor General to carry out an examination under Part 2 of the National Audit Act 1983 (c. 44) into the economy, effectiveness and efficiency with which the National Lottery Commission has used its resources in discharging its functions under sections 5 to 10 of the National Lottery etc. Act 1993.
42 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting a qualifying body under the Unfair Terms in Consumer Contracts Regulations 1999 (S.I. 1999/2083) to exercise its functions under those Regulations.

43 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting an enforcement authority under the Consumer Protection (Distance Selling) Regulations 2000 (S.I. 2000/2334) to exercise its functions under those Regulations.

44 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting an enforcement authority under the Financial Services (Distance Marketing) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/2095) to exercise its functions under those Regulations.

45 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting a local weights and measures authority in England and Wales to exercise its functions under section 230(2) of the Enterprise Act 2002 (c. 40) (notice of intention to prosecute, etc).

46 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting the Financial Services Authority to exercise its functions under any of the following—

(a) the legislation relating to friendly societies or to industrial and provident societies;
(b) the Building Societies Act 1986 (c. 53);
(c) Part 7 of the Companies Act 1989 (c. 40) (financial markets and insolvency);
(d) the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (c. 8).

47 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting the competent authority for the purposes of Part 6 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (official listing) to exercise its functions under that Part.

48 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting a body corporate established in accordance with section 212(1) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (compensation scheme manager) to exercise its functions.

49 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting a recognised investment exchange or a recognised clearing house to exercise its functions as such.

“Recognised investment exchange” and “recognised clearing house” have the same meaning as in section 285 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000.

50 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting a person approved under the Uncertificated Securities Regulations 2001 (S.I. 2001/3755) as an operator of a relevant system (within the meaning of those regulations) to exercise his functions.

51 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting a body designated under section 326(1) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (designated professional bodies) to exercise its functions in its capacity as a body designated under that section.

52 A disclosure with a view to the institution of, or otherwise for the purposes of, civil proceedings arising under or by virtue of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000.

53 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting a body designated by order under section 1216 of this Act (delegation of functions of Secretary of State) to exercise its functions under Part 42 of this Act (statutory auditors).
Until the coming into force of that Part, the references to section 1216 and Part 42 are to be read as references to section 46 of the Companies Act 1989 (c. 40) and Part 2 of that Act respectively.

54 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting a recognised supervisory or qualifying body, within the meaning of Part 42 of this Act, to exercise its functions as such.

55 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting an official receiver (including the Accountant in Bankruptcy in Scotland and the Official Assignee in Northern Ireland) to exercise his functions under the enactments relating to insolvency.

56 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting the Insolvency Practitioners Tribunal to exercise its functions under the Insolvency Act 1986 (c. 45).

57 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting a body that is for the time being a recognised professional body for the purposes of section 391 of the Insolvency Act 1986 (recognised professional bodies) to exercise its functions as such.

58 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting an overseas regulatory authority to exercise its regulatory functions.

59 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting the Regulator of Community Interest Companies to exercise functions under the Companies (Audit, Investigations and Community Enterprise) Act 2004 (c. 27).

60 A disclosure with a view to the institution of, or otherwise for the purposes of, criminal proceedings.

61 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting a person authorised by the Secretary of State under Part 2, 3 or 4 of the Proceeds of Crime Act 2002 (c. 29) to exercise his functions.

62 A disclosure with a view to the institution of, or otherwise for the purposes of, proceedings on an application under section 6, 7 or 8 of the Company Directors Disqualification Act 1986 (c. 46) (disqualification for unfitness).

63 A disclosure with a view to the institution of, or otherwise for the purposes of, proceedings before the Financial Services and Markets Tribunal.


65 A disclosure for the purposes of proceedings before the Pensions Regulator Tribunal.

66 A disclosure for the purpose of enabling or assisting a body appointed under section 14 of the Companies (Audit, Investigations and Community Enterprise) Act 2004 (supervision of periodic accounts and reports of issuers
of listed securities) to exercise functions mentioned in subsection (2) of that section.

67 A disclosure with a view to the institution of, or otherwise for the purposes of, disciplinary proceedings relating to the performance by a solicitor, barrister, advocate, foreign lawyer, auditor, accountant, valuer or actuary of his professional duties. “Foreign lawyer” has the meaning given by section 89(9) of the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990 (c. 41).

68 A disclosure with a view to the institution of, or otherwise for the purposes of, disciplinary proceedings relating to the performance by a public servant of his duties. “Public servant” means an officer or employee of the Crown or of any public or other authority for the time being designated for the purposes of this paragraph by the Secretary of State by order subject to negative resolution procedure.

69 A disclosure for the purpose of the provision of a summary or collection of information framed in such a way as not to enable the identity of any person to whom the information relates to be ascertained.

70 A disclosure in pursuance of any Community obligation.

**PART 3**

**OVERSEAS REGULATORY BODIES**

71 A disclosure is made in accordance with this Part of this Schedule if—

(a) it is made to a person or body within paragraph 72, and

(b) it is made for the purpose of enabling or assisting that person or body to exercise the functions mentioned in that paragraph.

72 The persons or bodies that are within this paragraph are those exercising functions of a public nature, under legislation in any country or territory outside the United Kingdom, that appear to the Panel to be similar to its own functions or those of the Financial Services Authority.

73 In determining whether to disclose information to a person or body in accordance with this Part of this Schedule, the Panel must have regard to the following considerations—

(a) whether the use that the person or body is likely to make of the information is sufficiently important to justify making the disclosure;

(b) whether the person or body has adequate arrangements to prevent the information from being used or further disclosed otherwise than for the purposes of carrying out the functions mentioned in paragraph 72 or any other purposes substantially similar to those for which information disclosed to the Panel could be used or further disclosed.
AMENDMENTS OF REMAINING PROVISIONS OF THE COMPANIES ACT 1985 RELATING TO OFFENCES

Misleading, false or deceptive statement in connection with valuation of non-cash consideration etc

1 In section 110 of the Companies Act 1985 (entitlement of valuer to full disclosure), for subsections (2) and (3) substitute—

“(2) A person who knowingly or recklessly makes a statement to which this subsection applies that is misleading, false or deceptive in a material particular commits an offence.

(3) Subsection (2) applies to a statement—
(a) made (whether orally or in writing) to a person carrying out a valuation or making a report under section 108 or 109, and
(b) conveying or purporting to convey any information or explanation which that person requires, or is entitled to require, under subsection (1) above.

(4) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (2) is liable—
(a) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or a fine (or both);
(b) on summary conviction—
(i) in England and Wales, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding twelve months or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both);
(ii) in Scotland or Northern Ireland, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months, or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both).”

Valuation procedures: matters to be communicated to registrar

2 For section 111 of the Companies Act 1985 (matters to be communicated to the registrar) substitute—

“111ZA Matters to be communicated to registrar: asset valuation report

(1) A company to which a report is made under section 108 as to the value of any consideration for which, or partly for which, it proposes to allot shares must deliver a copy of the report to the registrar for registration.

(2) The copy must be delivered at the same time that the company files the return of the allotment of those shares under section 569 of the Company Law Reform Act 2006 (return of allotment by limited company).

(3) If default is made in complying with subsection (1) or (2), an offence is committed by every officer of the company who is in default.

(4) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—
(a) on conviction on indictment, to a fine;
(b) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of the statutory maximum.

(5) In the case of default in delivering to the registrar any document as required by this section, the company, or any person liable for the default, may apply to the court for relief.

(6) The court, if satisfied—
   (a) that the omission to deliver the document was accidental or due to inadvertence, or
   (b) that it is just and equitable to grant relief,
may make an order extending the time for delivery of the document for such period as the court thinks proper.

111ZB Matters to be communicated to registrar: copy of resolution as to transfer of asset etc

(1) A company that has passed a resolution under section 104 with respect to the transfer of an asset must, within 15 days of doing so, deliver to the registrar a copy of the resolution together with the valuer’s report required by that section.

(2) If a company fails to comply with subsection (1), an offence is committed by—
   (a) the company, and
   (b) every officer of the company who is in default.

(3) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 3 on the standard scale.”.

Contravention of certain provisions relating to the amount to be paid for shares and means of payment

3 For section 114 of the Companies Act 1985 substitute—

“114 Penalty for contravention of ss.99 to 104 and 106

(1) If a company contravenes any of the provisions of sections 99 to 104 and 106, an offence is committed by—
   (a) the company, and
   (b) every officer of the company who is in default.

(2) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—
   (a) on conviction on indictment, to a fine;
   (b) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum.”.

Failure to give notice to registrar of reorganisation of share capital

4 For section 122(2) (failure to give notice to registrar of reorganisation of share capital) of the Companies Act 1985 substitute—

“(2) If default is made in complying with this section, an offence is committed by—
(a) the company, and
(b) every officer of the company who is in default.

(3) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 3 on the standard scale.”.

Failure to send registrar statement or notice of particulars of shares carrying special rights

5 For section 128(5) of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6) (failure to register allotment etc of shares carrying special rights) substitute—

“(5) If a company fails to comply with this section, an offence is committed by—
(a) the company, and
(b) every officer of the company who is in default.

(6) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 3 on the standard scale.”.

Failure to deliver to registrar statement or notice of newly created class rights

6 For section 129(4) of the Companies Act 1985 (failure to register newly created class rights) substitute—

“(4) If a company fails to comply with this section, an offence is committed by—
(a) the company, and
(b) every officer of the company who is in default.

(5) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 3 on the standard scale.”.

Concealment of name of creditor entitled to object to reduction of capital, or wilful misrepresentation of nature or amount of claim, etc

7 (1) Section 141 of the Companies Act 1985 (penalty for concealment or misrepresentation of details of creditor in connection with reduction of capital) is amended as follows.

(2) Make the existing provision subsection (1).

(3) Omit “and liable to a fine”.

(4) At the end add—

“(2) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—
(a) on conviction on indictment, to a fine;
(b) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum.”.
Schedule 3 — Amendments of remaining provisions of the Companies Act 1985 relating to offences

**Director authorising or permitting non-compliance with requirement to convene company meeting to consider serious loss of capital**

8 (1) In section 142(2) of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6) (failure to convene meeting to consider serious loss of capital) for “is liable to a fine” substitute “commits an offence”.

(2) After that provision insert—

“(2A) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—

(a) on conviction on indictment, to a fine;

(b) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum.”.

**Unlawful acquisition by company of its own shares**

9 (1) In subsection (2) of section 143 of the Companies Act 1985 (prohibition against acquisition by company of its own shares) omit “the company is liable to a fine, and every officer of the company who is in default is liable to imprisonment or a fine, or both; and,”.

(2) At the end of that section add—

“(4) If a company purports to act in contravention of this section an offence is committed by—

(a) the company, and

(b) every officer of the company who is in default.

(5) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—

(a) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or a fine (or both);

(b) on summary conviction—

(i) in England and Wales, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding twelve months or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both);

(ii) in Scotland or Northern Ireland, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months, or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both).”.

**Failure to cancel own shares acquired by company or to apply for re-registration as private company**

10 (1) In subsection (2) of section 149 of the Companies Act 1985 (penalty for failure to cancel own shares or to re-register as private company when required to do so) for the words “the company” to the end substitute “an offence is committed by—

(a) the company, and

(b) every officer of the company who is in default.”.

(2) At the end of that section add—

“(3) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 3 on the standard scale.”.
Contravention of provisions dealing with treasury shares

11 For section 162G of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6) (failure to comply with requirements in relation to treasury shares) substitute—

“162G Treasury shares: penalty for contravention

(1) If a company contravenes any of the provisions of sections 162A to 162F, an offence is committed by—
(a) the company, and
(b) every officer of the company who is in default.

(2) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—
(a) on conviction on indictment, to a fine;
(b) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum.”.

Failure to comply with disclosure obligations in connection with purchase of own shares

12 For section 169(6) of the Companies Act 1985 (failure to comply with disclosure requirements in connection with purchase of own shares) substitute—

“(6) If default is made in delivering to the registrar any return or statement required by this section, an offence is committed by every officer of the company who is in default.

(6A) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (6) is liable—
(a) on conviction on indictment, to a fine;
(b) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of the statutory maximum.”.

Failure to deliver to registrar return of cancellation or disposal of treasury shares

13 For section 169A(4) of the Companies Act 1985 (failure to deliver to registrar return in connection with cancellation or disposal of treasury shares) substitute—

“(4) If default is made in delivering to the registrar any return or statement required by this section, an offence is committed by every officer of the company who is in default.

(5) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—
(a) on conviction on indictment, to a fine;
(b) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of the statutory maximum.”.

Refusal of inspection of directors’ statement and auditors’ report relating to payment out of capital

14 For section 175(7) of the Companies Act 1985 (refusal of inspection of directors’ statement and auditors’ report relating to payment out of capital)
substitute—

“(7) If an inspection under subsection (6) is refused, an offence is committed by—
(a) the company, and
(b) every officer of the company who is in default.

(8) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (7) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 3 on the standard scale.”.

Failure to give notice to registrar of application to court or to deliver copy of court order

15 For section 176(4) of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6) (failure to give notice to registrar of application to court or to deliver copy of court order) substitute—

“(4) If a company fails to comply with subsection (3), an offence is committed by—
(a) the company, and
(b) every officer of the company who is in default.

(5) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 3 on the standard scale.”.

Failure to make ready certificates following allotment or transfer of shares

16 For section 185(5) of the Companies Act 1985 (failure to prepare share certificates, etc) substitute—

“(5) If default is made in complying with subsection (1), an offence is committed by every officer of the company who is in default.

(5A) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 3 on the standard scale.”.

Offences in connection with share warrants (Scotland)

17 (1) Section 189 of the Companies Act 1985 (offences in connection with share warrants (Scotland)) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1), for the words “he is on conviction thereof” to the end substitute “he commits an offence.”.

(3) In subsection (2), for the words “he is on conviction thereof” to the end substitute “he commits an offence.”.

(4) At the end add—

“(3) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (1) is liable on summary conviction to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months or to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale (or both).
(4) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (2) is liable—
   (a) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not
       exceeding seven years or a fine (or both);
   (b) on summary conviction, to imprisonment for a term not
       exceeding six months or a fine not exceeding the statutory
       maximum (or both)".

**Failure to send to registrar particulars of charge or of issue of debentures (England and Wales)**

18 (1) In subsection (3) of section 399 of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6) (failure to
   send to registrar particulars of charge or of issue of debentures) for the
   words “the company” to the end substitute “an offence is committed by—
   (a) the company, and
   (b) every officer of the company who is in default.”.

(2) At the end of that section add—
   “(4) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—
       (a) on conviction on indictment, to a fine;
       (b) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory
           maximum and, for continued contravention, a daily default
           fine not exceeding one-tenth of the statutory maximum.”.

**Failure to send to registrar particulars of charge on property acquired (England and Wales)**

19 For section 400(4) of the Companies Act 1985 (failure to send to registrar
   particulars of charge on property acquired) substitute—
   “(4) If default is made in complying with this section, an offence is
       committed by—
       (a) the company, and
       (b) every officer of the company who is in default.

(5) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—
   (a) on conviction on indictment, to a fine;
   (b) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory
       maximum and, for continued contravention, a daily default
       fine not exceeding one-tenth of the statutory maximum.”.

**Delivery of debenture etc without endorsement of certificate of registration of charge (England and Wales)**

20 (1) In subsection (3) of section 402 of the Companies Act 1985 (delivery of
   debenture without required endorsement) for the words “he is liable” to the
   end substitute “he commits an offence.”.

(2) At the end of that section add—
   “(4) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary
       conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale.”.

**Failure to give notice of appointment of receiver or manager, or of his ceasing to act (England and Wales)**

21 For section 405(4) of the Companies Act 1985 (notice to registrar of
enforcement of security) substitute—

“(4) A person who makes default in complying with the requirements of this section commits an offence.

(5) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 3 on the standard scale.”.

Omission of entry from company’s register of charges (England and Wales)

22 (1) In subsection (3) of section 407 of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6) (failure of officer to make required entry in company’s register of charges) for “he is liable to a fine” substitute “he commits an offence”.

(2) At the end of that section add—

“(4) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—

(a) on conviction on indictment, to a fine;
(b) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum.”.

Refusal of inspection of charging instrument or of register of charges (England and Wales)

23 For section 408(3) of the Companies Act 1985 (refusal of inspection of charging instrument or register of charges) substitute—

“(3) If inspection of copies, or of the register, is refused, an offence is committed by—

(a) the company, and
(b) every officer of the company who is in default.

(3A) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 3 on the standard scale.”.

Failure to send to registrar particulars of charge or issue of debentures (Scotland)

24 (1) In subsection (3) of section 415 of the Companies Act 1985 (Scotland: failure to send registrar particulars of charge or issue of debenture) for the words “the company and every officer of it” to the end substitute “an offence is committed by—

(a) the company, and
(b) every officer of the company who is in default.”.

(2) At the end of that section add—

“(4) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—

(a) on conviction on indictment, to a fine;
(b) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of the statutory maximum.”.
Failure to send to registrar particulars of charge on property acquired (Scotland)

25 (1) In subsection (3) of section 416 of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6) (Scotland: failure to send registrar particulars of charge or issue of debenture) for the words “the company and every officer of it” to the end substitute “an offence is committed by—
   (a) the company, and
   (b) every officer of the company who is in default.”.

(2) At the end of that section add—
   “(4) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—
   (a) on conviction on indictment, to a fine;
   (b) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of the statutory maximum.”.

Omission of entry from company’s register of charges (Scotland)

26 (1) In subsection (3) of section 422 of the Companies Act 1985 (Scotland: failure to make entry in company’s register of charges) for “he is liable to a fine” substitute “he commits an offence”.

(2) At the end of that section add—
   “(4) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—
   (a) on conviction on indictment, to a fine;
   (b) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum.”.

Refusal of inspection of charging instrument or of register of charges (Scotland)

27 For section 423(3) of the Companies Act 1985 (Scotland: refusal of inspection of charging instrument or register of charges) substitute—
   “(3) If inspection of the copies or register is refused, an offence is committed by—
   (a) the company, and
   (b) every officer of the company who is in default.

   (3A) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 3 on the standard scale.”.

Failure to annex to memorandum court order sanctioning compromise or arrangement with creditors

28 For section 425(4) of the Companies Act 1985 (failure to annex to company’s constitutional documents copy of court order sanctioning compromise or arrangement with creditors) substitute—
   “(4) If a company makes default in complying with subsection (3), an offence is committed by—
   (a) the company, and
   (b) every officer of the company who is in default.
(4A) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale.”.

**Failure to comply with requirements to inform members and creditors about compromise or arrangement**

29 For subsection (6) of section 426 of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6) (failure to inform members or creditors in advance of meeting about compromise or arrangement) substitute—

“(6) If a company makes default in complying with any requirement of this section, an offence is committed by—

(a) the company, and

(b) every officer of the company who is in default.

(6A) For the purposes of subsection (6) the following are treated as officers of the company—

(a) a liquidator or administrator of the company, and

(b) a trustee of a deed for securing the issue of debentures of the company.

(6B) A person is not guilty of an offence under subsection (6) if he shows that the default was due to the refusal of a director or trustee for debenture holders to supply the necessary particulars of his interests.

(6C) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (6) is liable—

(a) on conviction on indictment, to a fine;

(b) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum.”.

**Failure by director or trustee for debenture holders to give information to company**

30 (1) In subsection (7) of that section (failure by director or trustee for debenture holders to give information to company) omit “; and any person who makes default in complying with this subsection is liable to a fine”.

(2) At the end of that section add—

“(8) A person who makes default in complying with subsection (7) commits an offence.

(9) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (8) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale.”.

**Failure to deliver to registrar copy of order for company reconstruction or amalgamation**

31 (1) In section 427(5) of the Companies Act 1985 (failure to deliver to registrar copy of order for company reconstruction or amalgamation) omit the words “; and if default is made” to the end.

(2) After that provision insert—

“(5A) If default is made in complying with subsection (5) an offence is committed by—

(a) the company, and
(b) every officer of the company who is in default.

(5B) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale.”.

Failure to send notice etc relating to buy-out of minority shareholders

32 (1) In subsection (6) of section 429 of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6) (failure to send notice etc relating to buy-out of minority shareholders) for the words from “shall be liable to imprisonment” to the end substitute “commits an offence.”

(2) After subsection (7) of that section insert—

“(7A) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—

(a) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or a fine (or both);

(b) on summary conviction—

(i) in England and Wales, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding twelve months or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both) and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-fiftieth of the statutory maximum;

(ii) in Scotland or Northern Ireland, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months, or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both) and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-fiftieth of the statutory maximum.”.

Failure to give notice of rights to minority shareholder

33 (1) In subsection (6) of section 430A of the Companies Act 1985 (takeovers: failure to give notice of rights to minority shareholder) for the words “shall be liable” to the end substitute “commits an offence.”

(2) At the end of that section add—

“(8) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—

(a) on conviction on indictment, to a fine;

(b) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-fiftieth of the statutory maximum.”.

Failure to give information about interests in shares etc

34 (1) In subsection (3) of section 444 of the Companies Act 1985 (failure to give information requested by Secretary of State relating to interests in shares etc) for “is liable to imprisonment or a fine, or both” substitute “commits an offence”.

(2) At the end of that section add—

“(4) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—

(a) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or a fine (or both);

(b) on summary conviction—
Obstruction of rights conferred by a warrant or failure to comply with requirement under section 448

35  (1) In section 448(7) of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6) (obstruction of rights conferred by or by virtue of warrant for entry and search of premises) omit the words “and liable to a fine.” to the end.

(2) After that provision insert—

“(7A) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—
(a) on conviction on indictment, to a fine;
(b) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum.”.

Wrongful disclosure of information to which section 449 applies

36  (1) Section 449 of the Companies Act 1985 (wrongful disclosure of information obtained in course of company investigation) is amended as follows.

(2) For subsection (6)(a) and (b) substitute “is guilty of an offence.”

(3) After subsection (6) insert—

“(6A) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—
(a) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or a fine (or both);
(b) on summary conviction—
(i) in England and Wales, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding twelve months or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both);
(ii) in Scotland or Northern Ireland, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months, or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both).”.

(4) Omit subsection (7).

Destruction, mutilation etc of company documents

37  (1) For subsection (3) of section 450 of the Companies Act 1985 (offence of destroying, etc company documents) substitute—

“(3) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—
(a) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding seven years or a fine (or both);
(b) on summary conviction—
(i) in England and Wales, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding twelve months or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both);
(ii) in Scotland or Northern Ireland, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months, or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both)."

(2) Omit subsection (4) of that section.

Provision of false information in purported compliance with section 447

38 (1) For subsection (2) of section 451 of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6) (provision of false information in response to requirement under section 447) substitute—

“(2) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—
(a) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or a fine (or both);
(b) on summary conviction—
(i) in England and Wales, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding twelve months or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both);
(ii) in Scotland or Northern Ireland, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months, or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both)."

(2) Omit subsection (3) of that section.

Obstruction of inspector, etc exercising power to enter and remain on premises

39 (1) Section 453A of the Companies Act 1985 (obstruction of inspector etc exercising power to enter and remain on premises) is amended as follows.

(2) For subsection (5)(a) and (b) substitute “is guilty of an offence.”

(3) After subsection (5) insert—

“(5A) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—
(a) on conviction on indictment, to a fine;
(b) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum.”.

(4) Omit subsection (6).

Attempted evasion of restrictions under Part 15

40 (1) In subsection (1) of section 455 of the Companies Act 1985 (attempted evasion of restrictions under Part 15) for “is liable to a fine if he” substitute “commits an offence if he”.

(2) In subsection (2) of that section for the words “the company” to the end substitute “an offence is committed by—
(a) the company, and
(b) every officer of the company who is in default.”
(3) After that subsection insert—

“(2A) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—
(a) on conviction on indictment, to a fine;
(b) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum.”.

**Fraudulent trading**

41 (1) Section 458 of the Companies Act 1985 (fraudulent trading) is amended as follows.

(2) Make the existing provision subsection (1).

(3) For “is liable to imprisonment or a fine, or both” substitute “commits an offence”.

(4) At the end add—

“(2) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—
(a) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding ten years or a fine (or both);
(b) on summary conviction—
(i) in England and Wales, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding twelve months or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both);
(ii) in Scotland or Northern Ireland, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months, or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both).”.

**Failure to register court order in case of unfair prejudice to company members**

42 (1) In section 461(5) of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6) (failure to register court order in case of unfair prejudice to company members) omit the words “; and if a company makes default” to the end.

(2) After that provision insert—

“(5A) If a company makes default in complying with subsection (5), an offence is committed by—
(a) the company, and
(b) every officer of the company who is in default.

(5B) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 3 on the standard scale.”.

**Breach of duty etc in connection with application to strike company off register**

43 (1) In subsection (1) of section 652E of the Companies Act 1985 (enforcement of duties in connection with application to strike company off register) omit “and liable to a fine”.

(2) In subsection (2) of that section omit “and liable to imprisonment or a fine, or both”.
(3) At the end of that section add—

“(6) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (1) is liable—
(a) on conviction on indictment, to a fine;
(b) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum.

(7) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (2) is liable—
(a) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding seven years or a fine (or both);
(b) on summary conviction—
   (i) in England and Wales, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding twelve months or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both);
   (ii) in Scotland or Northern Ireland, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months, or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both).”.

Making unauthorised application to strike off company

44 (1) In subsection (2) of section 652F of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6) (making unauthorised application to strike off company) omit “and liable to a fine”.

(2) At the end of that section add—

“(3) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—
(a) on conviction on indictment, to a fine;
(b) on summary conviction, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum.”.

SCHEDULE 4

DOCUMENTS AND INFORMATION SENT OR SUPPLIED TO A COMPANY

PART 1

INTRODUCTION

Application of Schedule

1 This Schedule does not apply to documents or information sent or supplied by one company to another (see section 1109(4) and Schedules 5 and 6).

PART 2

COMMUNICATIONS IN HARD COPY FORM

Introduction

2 A document or information is validly sent or supplied to a company if it is sent or supplied in hard copy form in accordance with this Part of this Schedule.
Method of communication in hard copy form

3 (1) A document or information in hard copy form may be sent or supplied by hand or by post to an address (in accordance with paragraph 4).

(2) For the purposes of this Schedule, a person sends a document or information by post if he prepays and posts an envelope containing the document or information.

Address for communications in hard copy form

4 A document or information in hard copy form may be sent or supplied—
   (a) to an address specified by the company for the purpose;
   (b) to the company’s registered office;
   (c) to an address to which any provision of the Companies Acts authorises the document or information to be sent or supplied.

PART 3

COMMUNICATIONS IN ELECTRONIC FORM

Introduction

5 (1) A document or information is validly sent or supplied to a company if it is sent or supplied in electronic form in accordance with this Part of this Schedule.

(2) This paragraph has effect subject to any requirements or contrary provision in the Companies Acts.

Conditions for use of communications in electronic form

6 A document or information may only be sent or supplied to a company in an electronic form if—
   (a) the company has agreed (generally or specifically) that the document or information may be sent or supplied in that form (and has not revoked that agreement), or
   (b) the company is deemed to have so agreed by a provision in the Companies Acts.

Address for communications in electronic form

7 (1) Where the document or information is sent or supplied by electronic means, it may only be sent or supplied in electronic form to an address—
   (a) specified for the purpose by the company (generally or specifically), or
   (b) deemed by a provision in the Companies Acts to have been so specified.

(2) Where the document or information is sent or supplied in electronic form by hand or by post, it must be sent or supplied to an address to which it could be validly sent if it were in hard copy form.
PART 4
OTHER AGREED FORMS OF COMMUNICATION

8  (1) A document or information that is sent or supplied to a company otherwise than in hard copy form or electronic form is validly sent or supplied if it is sent or supplied in a form or manner that has been agreed by the company.

(2) This paragraph has effect subject to any requirements or contrary provision in the Companies Acts.

SCHEDULE 5

Communications by a company other than a traded company

PART 1
Introduction

1 This Schedule applies to documents or information sent or supplied by companies that are not traded companies.

PART 2
Communications in hard copy form

Introduction

2 A document or information is validly sent or supplied by a company if it is sent or supplied in hard copy form in accordance with this Part of this Schedule.

Method of communication in hard copy form

3 (1) A document or information in hard copy form must be—
   (a) handed to the intended recipient, or
   (b) sent or supplied by hand or by post to an address (in accordance with paragraph 4).

(2) For the purposes of this Schedule, a person sends a document or information by post if he prepays and posts an envelope containing the document or information.

Address for communications in hard copy form

4 (1) A document or information in hard copy form may be sent or supplied by the company—
   (a) to an address specified for the purpose by the intended recipient;
   (b) to a company at its registered office;
   (c) to a person in his capacity as a member of the company at his address as shown in the company’s register of members;
(d) to a person in his capacity as a director of the company at his address as shown in the company’s register of directors;
(e) to an address to which any provision of the Companies Acts authorises the document or information to be sent or supplied.

(2) Where the company is unable to obtain an address falling within sub-paragraph (1), the document or information may be sent or supplied to the intended recipient’s last address known to the company.

**PART 3**

**COMMUNICATIONS IN ELECTRONIC FORM**

**Introduction**

5 (1) A document or information is validly sent or supplied by a company if it is sent in electronic form in accordance with this Part of this Schedule.

(2) This paragraph has effect subject to any requirements or contrary provision in the Companies Acts.

**Agreement to communications in electronic form**

6 A document or information may only be sent or supplied by a company in electronic form—

(a) to a person who has agreed (generally or specifically) that the document or information may be sent or supplied in that form (and has not revoked that agreement), or
(b) to a company that is deemed to have so agreed by a provision in the Companies Acts.

**Address for communications in electronic form**

7 (1) Where the document or information is sent or supplied by electronic means, it may only be sent or supplied to an address—

(a) specified for the purpose by the intended recipient (generally or specifically), or
(b) where the intended recipient is a company, deemed by a provision of the Companies Acts to have been so specified.

(2) Where the document or information is sent or supplied in electronic form by hand or by post, it must be—

(a) handed to the intended recipient, or
(b) sent or supplied to an address to which it could be validly sent if it were in hard copy form.

**PART 4**

**COMMUNICATIONS BY MEANS OF A WEBSITE**

**Use of website**

8 (1) A document or information is validly sent or supplied by a company if it is made available on a website in accordance with this Part of this Schedule.
(2) This paragraph has effect subject to any requirements or contrary provision in the Companies Acts.

Agreement to use of website

9 A document or information may only be sent or supplied by the company to a person by being made available on a website if the person—
   (a) has agreed (generally or specifically) that the document or information may be sent or supplied to him in that manner, or
   (b) is taken to have so agreed under—
       (i) paragraph 10 (members of the company etc), or
       (ii) paragraph 11 (debenture holders),
and has not revoked that agreement.

Deemed agreement of members of company etc to use of website

10 (1) This paragraph applies to a document or information to be sent or supplied to a person—
   (a) as a member of the company, or
   (b) as a person identified by a member (in accordance with the company’s articles or regulations made under section 137) as entitled to enjoy or exercise all or any specified rights of the member in relation to the company (an “entitled person”).

(2) To the extent that—
   (a) the members of the company have resolved that the company may send or supply documents or information to members by making them available on a website, or
   (b) the company’s articles contain provision to that effect,
a member of the company or entitled person in relation to whom the following conditions are met is taken to have agreed that the company may send or supply documents or information to him in that manner.

(3) The conditions are that—
   (a) the member or entitled person has been asked individually by the company to agree that the company may send or supply documents or information generally, or the documents or information in question, to him by means of a website, and
   (b) the company has not received a response within the period of 28 days beginning with the date on which the company’s request was sent.

(4) A member or entitled person is not taken to have so agreed if the company’s request—
   (a) did not state clearly what the effect of a failure to respond would be, or
   (b) was sent less than twelve months after a previous request made to him for the purposes of this paragraph in respect of the same or a similar class of documents or information.

(5) A resolution under this paragraph is subject to Chapter 3 of Part 3 of this Act (resolutions affecting company’s constitution).
Deemed agreement of debenture holders to use of website

11 (1) This paragraph applies to a document or information to be sent or supplied to a person as holder of a company’s debentures.

(2) To the extent that—
   (a) the relevant debenture holders have duly resolved that the company may send or supply documents or information to them by making them available on a website, or
   (b) the instrument creating the debenture in question contains provision to that effect,
   a debenture holder in relation to whom the following conditions are met is taken to have agreed that the company may send or supply documents or information to him in that manner.

(3) The conditions are that—
   (a) the debenture holder has been asked individually by the company to agree that the company may send or supply documents or information generally, or the documents or information in question, to him by means of a website, and
   (b) the company has not received a response within the period of 28 days beginning with the date on which the company’s request was sent.

(4) A person is not taken to have so agreed if the company’s request—
   (a) did not state clearly what the effect of a failure to respond would be, or
   (b) was sent less than twelve months after a previous request made to him for the purposes of this paragraph in respect of the same or a similar class of documents or information.

(5) For the purposes of this paragraph—
   (a) the relevant debenture holders are the holders of debentures of the company ranking pari passu for all purposes with the intended recipient, and
   (b) a resolution of the relevant debenture holders is duly passed if they agree in accordance with the provisions of the instruments creating the debentures.

Availability of document or information

12 (1) A document or information authorised or required to be sent or supplied by means of a website must be made available in a form, and by a means, that the company reasonably considers will enable the recipient—
   (a) to read it, and
   (b) to retain a copy of it.

(2) For this purpose a document or information can be read only if—
   (a) it can be read with the naked eye, or
   (b) to the extent that it consists of images (for example photographs, pictures, maps, plans or drawings), it can be seen with the naked eye.

Notification of availability

13 (1) The company must notify the intended recipient of—
(a) the presence of the document or information on the website,
(b) the address of the website,
(c) the place on the website where it may be accessed, and
(d) how to access the document or information.

(2) The document or information is taken to be sent—
(a) on the date on which the notification required by this paragraph is sent, or
(b) if later, the date on which the document or information first appears on the website after that notification is sent.

Period of availability on website

14 (1) The company must make the document or information available on the website throughout—
(a) the period specified by any applicable provision of the Companies Acts, or
(b) if no such period is specified, the period of 28 days beginning with the date on which the notification required under paragraph 13 is sent to the person in question.

(2) For the purposes of this paragraph, a failure to make a document or information available on a website throughout the period mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) shall be disregarded if—
(a) it is made available on the website for part of that period, and
(b) the failure to make it available throughout that period is wholly attributable to circumstances that it would not be reasonable to have expected the company to prevent or avoid.

PART 5

OTHER AGREED FORMS OF COMMUNICATION

15 (1) A document or information that is sent or supplied otherwise than in hard copy or electronic form or by means of a website is validly sent or supplied if it is sent or supplied in a form or manner that has been agreed by the intended recipient.

(2) This paragraph has effect subject to any requirements or contrary provision in the Companies Acts.

PART 6

SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISIONS

Joint holders of shares or debentures

16 (1) This paragraph applies in relation to documents or information to be sent or supplied to joint holders of shares or debentures of a company.

(2) Anything to be agreed or specified by the holder must be agreed or specified by all the joint holders.

(3) Anything authorised or required to be sent or supplied to the holder may be sent or supplied either—
(4) This paragraph has effect subject to anything in the company’s articles.

**Death or bankruptcy of holder of shares**

17 (1) This paragraph has effect in the case of the death or bankruptcy of a holder of a company’s shares.

(2) Documents or information required or authorised to be sent or supplied to the member may be sent or supplied to the persons claiming to be entitled to the shares in consequence of the death or bankruptcy—

(a) by name, or

(b) by the title of representatives of the deceased, or trustee of the bankrupt, or by any like description,

at the address in the United Kingdom supplied for the purpose by those so claiming.

(3) Until such an address has been so supplied, a document or information may be sent or supplied in any manner in which it might have been sent or supplied if the death or bankruptcy had not occurred.

(4) This paragraph has effect subject to anything in the company’s articles.

(5) References in this paragraph to the bankruptcy of a person include—

(a) the sequestration of the estate of a person;

(b) a person’s estate being the subject of a protected trust deed (within the meaning of the Bankruptcy (Scotland) Act 1985 (c. 66)).

In such a case the reference in sub-paragraph (2)(b) to the trustee of the bankrupt is to be read as the permanent or interim trustee (within the meaning of that Act) on the sequestrated estate or, as the case may be, the trustee under the protected deed.
PART 2

COMMUNICATIONS IN HARD COPY FORM

Introduction

2 A document or information is validly sent or supplied by a traded company if it is sent or supplied in hard copy form in accordance with this Part of this Schedule.

Method of communication in hard copy form

3 (1) A document or information in hard copy form must be—
   (a) handed to the intended recipient, or
   (b) sent or supplied by hand or by post to an address (in accordance with paragraph 4).

   (2) For the purposes of this Schedule, a person sends a document or information by post if he prepays and posts an envelope containing the document or information.

Address for communications in hard copy form

4 (1) Documents or information in hard copy form may be sent or supplied by the traded company—
   (a) to an address specified for the purpose by the intended recipient;
   (b) to a company at its registered office;
   (c) to a person in his capacity as a member of the company at his address as shown in the company’s register of members;
   (d) to a person in his capacity as a director of the company at his address as shown in the company’s register of directors;
   (e) to an address to which any provision of the Companies Acts authorises the document or information to be sent or supplied.

   (2) Where the traded company is unable to obtain an address falling within subparagraph (1), the documents or information may be sent or supplied to the intended recipient’s last address known to the company.

PART 3

COMMUNICATIONS IN ELECTRONIC FORM

Introduction

5 (1) A document or information is validly sent or supplied by a traded company if it is sent in electronic form in accordance with this Part of this Schedule.

   (2) This paragraph has effect subject to any requirements or contrary provision in the Companies Acts.

Agreement to communications in electronic form

6 (1) A document or information may only be sent or supplied by a traded company in electronic form—


(a) to a person who has agreed (generally or specifically) that the document or information may be sent or supplied in that form (and has not revoked that agreement), or
(b) to a company that is deemed to have so agreed by a provision in the Companies Acts.

(2) A document or information may not be sent or supplied by a traded company in electronic form to—
(a) a member of the company,
(b) a person identified by a member (in accordance with the company’s articles or regulations made under section 137) as entitled to enjoy or exercise all or any specified rights of the member in relation to the company, or
(c) a holder of debt securities of the company, except in accordance with paragraph 7 or 8 (resolution required before documents and information sent or supplied in electronic form).

Resolution required for communications in electronic form with members of traded company etc

7 (1) This paragraph applies to documents or information to be sent or supplied to a person—
(a) as a member of a traded company, or
(b) as a person identified by a member (in accordance with the company’s articles or regulations made under section 137) as entitled to enjoy or exercise all or any specified rights of the member in relation to the company.

(2) The company may only send or supply such documents or information in electronic form if—
(a) the members of the company have resolved that it may do so, or
(b) the company’s articles contain provision to that effect.

(3) A resolution under this paragraph is subject to Chapter 3 of Part 3 of this Act (resolutions affecting company’s constitution).

Resolution required for communications in electronic form with holders of debt securities

8 (1) This paragraph applies to documents or information to be sent or supplied to a person as a holder of debt securities of a traded company.

(2) The company may only send or supply such documents or information in electronic form if—
(a) the relevant holders of debt securities have duly resolved that it may do so, or
(b) the instrument creating the debt securities in question contains provision to that effect.

(3) For the purposes of this paragraph—
(a) the relevant holders of debt securities are the holders of debt securities of the company ranking pari passu for all purposes with the intended recipient, and
(b) a resolution of the relevant holders of debt securities is duly passed if they agree in accordance with the provisions of the instruments creating the debt securities.
(4) In this Part of this Schedule, “debt securities” means bonds or other forms of transferable securitised debts, with the exception of securities—
   (a) that are equivalent to shares in companies, or
   (b) that if converted, or if the rights conferred by them are exercised, give rise to a right to acquire shares or securities equivalent to shares.

Address for communications in electronic form

9 (1) Where the document or information is sent or supplied by electronic means, it may only be sent or supplied to an address—
   (a) specified for the purpose by the intended recipient (generally or specifically), or
   (b) where the intended recipient is a company, deemed by a provision of the Companies Acts to have been so specified.

(2) Where the document or information is sent or supplied in electronic form by hand or by post, it must be—
   (a) handed to the intended recipient, or
   (b) sent or supplied to an address to which it could be validly sent if it were in hard copy form.

PART 4

COMMUNICATIONS BY MEANS OF A WEBSITE

Use of website

10 (1) A document or information is validly sent or supplied by a traded company if it is made available on a website in accordance with this Part of this Schedule.

(2) This paragraph has effect subject to any requirements or contrary provision in the Companies Acts.

Use of website to communicate with members of traded company etc

11 (1) This paragraph applies to a document or information to be sent or supplied by a traded company to a person—
   (a) as a member of the company, or
   (b) as a person identified by a member (in accordance with the company’s articles or regulations made under section 137) as entitled to enjoy or exercise all or any specified rights of the member in relation to the company (an “entitled person”).

(2) The company may only send or supply such documents or information by making them available on a website if—
   (a) the members of the company have resolved that it may do so, or
   (b) the company’s articles contain provision to that effect.

(3) The traded company may only send or supply such documents or information in that manner to members or entitled persons who—
   (a) have agreed that the company may send or supply documents or information generally, or the documents or information in question, to them in that manner, or
648

(4) A person is taken to have so agreed if—

(a) he has been asked individually by the company to agree that the company may send or supply documents or information generally, or the documents or information in question, to him in that manner, and

(b) the company has not received a response within the period of 28 days beginning with the date on which the company’s request was sent.

(5) A person is not taken to have so agreed if the company’s request—

(a) did not state clearly what the effect of a failure to respond would be, or

(b) was sent less than twelve months after a previous request made to him in respect of the same or a similar class of documents or information.

(6) A resolution under this paragraph is subject to Chapter 3 of Part 3 of this Act (resolutions affecting company’s constitution).

Use of website to communicate with holders of debt securities

12 (1) This paragraph applies to a document or information to be sent or supplied by a traded company to a person as a holder of debt securities of the company.

(2) The company may only send or supply such documents or information by making them available on a website if—

(a) the relevant holders of debt securities have duly resolved that it may do so, or

(b) the instrument creating the debt securities in question contains provision to that effect.

(3) The traded company may only send or supply such documents in that manner to holders of debt securities who—

(a) have agreed that the company may send or supply documents or information generally, or the documents or information in question, to them in that manner, or

(b) are taken to have so agreed under the following provisions, and have not revoked that agreement.

(4) A person is taken to have so agreed if—

(a) he has been asked individually by the company to agree that the company may send or supply documents or information generally, or the documents or information in question, to him in that manner, and

(b) the company has not received a response within the period of 28 days beginning with the date on which the company’s request was sent.

(5) A person is not taken to have so agreed if the company’s request—

(a) did not state clearly what the effect of a failure to respond would be, or
(b) was sent less than twelve months after any previous request made to him in respect of the same or a similar class of documents or information.

(6) For the purposes of this paragraph—
   (a) the relevant holders of debt securities are the holders of debt securities of the company ranking pari passu for all purposes with the intended recipient, and
   (b) a resolution of the relevant holders of debt securities is duly passed if they agree in accordance with the provisions of the instruments creating the debt securities.

(7) In this Part of this Schedule, “debt securities” means bonds or other forms of transferable securitised debts, with the exception of securities—
   (a) that are equivalent to shares in companies, or
   (b) that if converted, or if the rights conferred by them are exercised, give rise to a right to acquire shares or securities equivalent to shares.

Use of website to communicate with other debenture holders

13 (1) A document or information may only be sent or supplied by the company to a person as a holder of debentures of the company (other than debt securities) by being made available on a website if the person—
   (a) has agreed (generally or specifically) that the document or information may be sent or supplied to him in that manner, or
   (b) is taken to have so agreed under this paragraph, and has not revoked that agreement.

(2) To the extent that—
   (a) the relevant debenture holders have duly resolved that the company may send or supply documents or information to them by making them available on a website, or
   (b) the instrument creating the debenture in question contains provision to that effect,
    a debenture holder in relation to whom the following conditions are met is taken to have agreed that documents or information may be sent or supplied to him by the company in that manner.

(3) The conditions are that—
   (a) the debenture holder has been asked individually by the company to agree that the company may send or supply documents or information generally, or the documents or information in question, to him by means of a website, and
   (b) the company has not received a response within the period of 28 days beginning with the date on which the company’s request was sent.

(4) A person is not taken to have so agreed if the company’s request—
   (a) did not state clearly what the effect of a failure to respond would be, or
   (b) was sent less than twelve months after a previous request made to him for the purposes of this paragraph in respect of the same or a similar class of documents or information.

(5) For the purposes of this paragraph—
(a) the relevant debenture holders are the holders of debentures of the company (other than debt securities) ranking pari passu for all purposes with the intended recipient, and

(b) a resolution of the relevant debenture holders is duly passed if they agree in accordance with the provisions of the instruments creating the debentures.

Use of website to communicate with other persons

14 A document or information may only be sent or supplied by a traded company to a person who is not—
   (a) a member of the company or an entitled person, or
   (b) a holder of debentures of the company,
by being made available on a website if the person has agreed (generally or specifically) that the document or information may be sent or supplied to him in that manner (and has not revoked that agreement).

Availability of document or information

15 (1) A document or information authorised or required to be sent or supplied by means of a website must be made available in a form, and by a means, that the company reasonably considers will enable the recipient—
   (a) to read it, and
   (b) to retain a copy of it.

(2) For this purpose a document or information can be read only if—
   (a) it can be read with the naked eye, or
   (b) to the extent that it consists of images (for example photographs, pictures, maps, plans or drawings), it can be seen with the naked eye.

Notification of availability

16 (1) The traded company must notify the intended recipient of—
   (a) the presence of the document or information on the website,
   (b) the address of the website,
   (c) the place on the website where it may be accessed, and
   (d) how to access the document or information.

(2) The document or information is taken to be sent—
   (a) on the date on which the notification required by this paragraph is sent, or
   (b) if later, the date on which the document or information first appears on the website after that notification is sent.

Period of availability on website

17 (1) The traded company must make the document or information available on the website throughout—
   (a) the period specified by any applicable provision of the Companies Acts, or
   (b) if no such period is specified, the period of 28 days beginning with the date on which the notification required under paragraph 16 is sent to the person in question.
(2) For the purposes of this paragraph, a failure to make a document or information available on a website throughout the period mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) shall be disregarded if—

(a) it is made available on the website for part of that period, and

(b) the failure to make it available throughout that period is wholly attributable to circumstances that it would not be reasonable to have expected the company to prevent or avoid.

**PART 5**

**OTHER AGREED FORMS OF COMMUNICATION**

18 (1) A document or information that is sent or supplied otherwise than in hard copy or electronic form or by means of a website is validly sent or supplied if it is sent or supplied in a form or manner that has been agreed by the intended recipient.

(2) This paragraph has effect subject to any requirements or contrary provision in the Companies Acts.

**PART 6**

**SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISIONS**

*Joint holders of shares or debentures*

19 (1) This paragraph applies in relation to documents or information to be sent or supplied to joint holders of shares or debentures of a company.

(2) Anything to be agreed or specified by the holder must be agreed or specified by all the joint holders.

(3) Anything authorised or required to be sent or supplied to the holder may be sent or supplied either—

(a) to each of the joint holders, or

(b) to the holder whose name appears first in the register of members or the relevant register of debenture holders.

(4) This paragraph has effect subject to anything in the company’s articles.

*Death or bankruptcy of holder of shares*

20 (1) This paragraph has effect in the case of the death or bankruptcy of a holder of a traded company’s shares.

(2) Documents or information required or authorised to be sent or supplied to the member may be sent or supplied to the persons claiming to be entitled to the shares in consequence of the death or bankruptcy—

(a) by name, or

(b) by the title of representatives of the deceased, or trustee of the bankrupt, or by any like description, at the address in the United Kingdom supplied for the purpose by those so claiming.
(3) Until such an address has been so supplied, a document or information may be sent or supplied in any manner in which it might have been sent or supplied if the death or bankruptcy had not occurred.

(4) This paragraph has effect subject to anything in the company’s articles.

(5) References in this paragraph to the bankruptcy of a person include—

(a) the sequestration of the estate of a person;
(b) a person’s estate being the subject of a protected trust deed (within the meaning of the Bankruptcy (Scotland) Act 1985 (c. 66)).

In such a case the reference in sub-paragraph (2)(b) to the trustee of the bankrupt is to be read as the permanent or interim trustee (within the meaning of that Act) on the sequestrated estate or, as the case may be, the trustee under the protected deed.

SCHEDULE 7

MEANING OF “SUBSIDIARY” ETC: SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISIONS

Introduction

1 The provisions of this Part of this Schedule explain expressions used in section 1124 (meaning of “subsidiary” etc) and otherwise supplement that section.

Voting rights in a company

2 In section 1124(1)(a) and (c) the references to the voting rights in a company are to the rights conferred on shareholders in respect of their shares or, in the case of a company not having a share capital, on members, to vote at general meetings of the company on all, or substantially all, matters.

Right to appoint or remove a majority of the directors

3 (1) In section 1124(1)(b) the reference to the right to appoint or remove a majority of the board of directors is to the right to appoint or remove directors holding a majority of the voting rights at meetings of the board on all, or substantially all, matters.

(2) A company shall be treated as having the right to appoint to a directorship if—

(a) a person’s appointment to it follows necessarily from his appointment as director of the company, or
(b) the directorship is held by the company itself.

(3) A right to appoint or remove which is exercisable only with the consent or concurrence of another person shall be left out of account unless no other person has a right to appoint or, as the case may be, remove in relation to that directorship.

Rights exercisable only in certain circumstances or temporarily incapable of exercise

4 (1) Rights which are exercisable only in certain circumstances shall be taken into account only—
(a) when the circumstances have arisen, and for so long as they continue to obtain, or
(b) when the circumstances are within the control of the person having the rights.

(2) Rights which are normally exercisable but are temporarily incapable of exercise shall continue to be taken into account.

Rights held by one person on behalf of another

5 Rights held by a person in a fiduciary capacity shall be treated as not held by him.

6 (1) Rights held by a person as nominee for another shall be treated as held by the other.

(2) Rights shall be regarded as held as nominee for another if they are exercisable only on his instructions or with his consent or concurrence.

Rights attached to shares held by way of security

7 Rights attached to shares held by way of security shall be treated as held by—
(a) where apart from the right to exercise them for the purpose of preserving the value of the security, or of realising it, the rights are exercisable only in accordance with his instructions, and
(b) where the shares are held in connection with the granting of loans as part of normal business activities and apart from the right to exercise them for the purpose of preserving the value of the security, or of realising it, the rights are exercisable only in his interests.

Rights attributed to holding company

8 (1) Rights shall be treated as held by a holding company if they are held by any of its subsidiary companies.

(2) Nothing in paragraph 6 or 7 shall be construed as requiring rights held by a holding company to be treated as held by any of its subsidiaries.

(3) For the purposes of paragraph 7 rights shall be treated as being exercisable in accordance with the instructions or in the interests of a company if they are exercisable in accordance with the instructions of or, as the case may be, in the interests of—
(a) any subsidiary or holding company of that company, or
(b) any subsidiary of a holding company of that company.

Disregard of certain rights

9 The voting rights in a company shall be reduced by any rights held by the company itself.

Supplementary

10 References in any provision of paragraphs 5 to 9 to rights held by a person include rights falling to be treated as held by him by virtue of any other
provision of those paragraphs but not rights which by virtue of any such provision are to be treated as not held by him.

SCHEDULE 8

Section 1127

PARENT AND SUBSIDIARY UNDERTAKINGS: SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISIONS

Introduction

1 The provisions of this Schedule explain expressions used in section 1127 (parent and subsidiary undertakings) and otherwise supplement that section.

Voting rights in an undertaking

2 (1) In section 1127(2)(a) and (d) the references to the voting rights in an undertaking are to the rights conferred on shareholders in respect of their shares or, in the case of an undertaking not having a share capital, on members, to vote at general meetings of the undertaking on all, or substantially all, matters.

   (2) In relation to an undertaking which does not have general meetings at which matters are decided by the exercise of voting rights the references to holding a majority of the voting rights in the undertaking shall be construed as references to having the right under the constitution of the undertaking to direct the overall policy of the undertaking or to alter the terms of its constitution.

Right to appoint or remove a majority of the directors

3 (1) In section 1127(2)(b) the reference to the right to appoint or remove a majority of the board of directors is to the right to appoint or remove directors holding a majority of the voting rights at meetings of the board on all, or substantially all, matters.

   (2) An undertaking shall be treated as having the right to appoint to a directorship if—

      (a) a person’s appointment to it follows necessarily from his appointment as director of the undertaking, or

      (b) the directorship is held by the undertaking itself.

   (3) A right to appoint or remove which is exercisable only with the consent or concurrence of another person shall be left out of account unless no other person has a right to appoint or, as the case may be, remove in relation to that directorship.

Right to exercise dominant influence

4 (1) For the purposes of section 1127(2)(c) an undertaking shall not be regarded as having the right to exercise a dominant influence over another undertaking unless it has a right to give directions with respect to the operating and financial policies of that other undertaking which its directors are obliged to comply with whether or not they are for the benefit of that other undertaking.
(2) A “control contract” means a contract in writing conferring such a right which—
   (a) is of a kind authorised by the articles of the undertaking in relation to which the right is exercisable, and
   (b) is permitted by the law under which that undertaking is established.

(3) This paragraph shall not be read as affecting the construction of section 1127(4)(a).

Rights exercisable only in certain circumstances or temporarily incapable of exercise

5 (1) Rights which are exercisable only in certain circumstances shall be taken into account only—
   (a) when the circumstances have arisen, and for so long as they continue to obtain, or
   (b) when the circumstances are within the control of the person having the rights.

(2) Rights which are normally exercisable but are temporarily incapable of exercise shall continue to be taken into account.

Rights held by one person on behalf of another

6 Rights held by a person in a fiduciary capacity shall be treated as not held by him.

7 (1) Rights held by a person as nominee for another shall be treated as held by the other.

(2) Rights shall be regarded as held as nominee for another if they are exercisable only on his instructions or with his consent or concurrence.

Rights attached to shares held by way of security

8 Rights attached to shares held by way of security shall be treated as held by the person providing the security—
   (a) where apart from the right to exercise them for the purpose of preserving the value of the security, or of realising it, the rights are exercisable only in accordance with his instructions, and
   (b) where the shares are held in connection with the granting of loans as part of normal business activities and apart from the right to exercise them for the purpose of preserving the value of the security, or of realising it, the rights are exercisable only in his interests.

Rights attributed to parent undertaking

9 (1) Rights shall be treated as held by a parent undertaking if they are held by any of its subsidiary undertakings.

(2) Nothing in paragraph 7 or 8 shall be construed as requiring rights held by a parent undertaking to be treated as held by any of its subsidiary undertakings.

(3) For the purposes of paragraph 8 rights shall be treated as being exercisable in accordance with the instructions or in the interests of an undertaking if
they are exercisable in accordance with the instructions of or, as the case may be, in the interests of any group undertaking.

Disregard of certain rights

10 The voting rights in an undertaking shall be reduced by any rights held by the undertaking itself.

Supplementary

11 References in any provision of paragraphs 6 to 10 to rights held by a person include rights falling to be treated as held by him by virtue of any other provision of those paragraphs but not rights which by virtue of any such provision are to be treated as not held by him.

SCHEDULE 9

INDEX OF DEFINED EXPRESSIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Expression</th>
<th>Sections</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>abbreviated accounts</td>
<td>sections 452(4) and 453(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accounting reference date and accounting reference period</td>
<td>section 397</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accounting standards (in Part 16)</td>
<td>section 472</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accounts meeting</td>
<td>section 445(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acquisition, in relation to a non-cash asset address</td>
<td>section 739(2) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— generally</td>
<td>section 1107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— in the company communications provisions</td>
<td>section 1114(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>affirmative resolution procedure, in relation to regulations and orders</td>
<td>section 1254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allotment and related expressions</td>
<td>section 738 of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allotted shares and allotted share capital</td>
<td>section 560(1)(b) and (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>annual accounts (in Part 16)</td>
<td>section 479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>annual accounts and reports (in Part 16)</td>
<td>section 479</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>annual general meeting</td>
<td>section 343</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>annual return</td>
<td>section 858</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>appropriate audit authority (in sections 536, 537 and 538)</td>
<td>section 539(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expression</td>
<td>Section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the appropriate rate (in sections 99 to 105 of the 1985 Act)</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>approval after being made, in relation to regulations and orders</td>
<td>1255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrangement (in sections 425 and 426 of the 1985 Act)</td>
<td>425(6)(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>articles</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>associated bodies corporate and associated company (in Part 10)</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authenticated, in relation to a document or information sent or supplied to a company</td>
<td>1112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authentication, by a company of documents or proceedings (in England and Wales or Northern Ireland)</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authorised group, of members of a company (in Part 15)</td>
<td>377(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authorised insurance company</td>
<td>742C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authorised minimum (for the purposes of sections 774 and 775)</td>
<td>776</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>authorised signatory</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bank holiday</td>
<td>744</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>banking company</td>
<td>742B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>body corporate</td>
<td>1138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>books and papers, books or papers</td>
<td>744</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>called-up share capital</td>
<td>737(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capital redemption reserve</td>
<td>170(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capitalisation, in relation to a company’s profits (in Part 8 of the 1985 Act)</td>
<td>280(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case 1 Scheme, Case 2 Scheme, Case 3 Scheme (in section 427A of, and Schedule 15B to, the 1985 Act)</td>
<td>427A(8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cause of action, in relation to derivative proceedings (in Chapter 2 of Part 11)</td>
<td>265(7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>certified translation (in Part 35)</td>
<td>1073</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>circulation date, in relation to a written resolution (in Part 14)</td>
<td>297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>class of shares</td>
<td>643</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the Companies Acts</td>
<td>section 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Companies Act accounts</td>
<td>sections 401(1)(a) and 409(2)(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Companies Act group accounts</td>
<td>section 409(2)(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Companies Act individual accounts</td>
<td>section 401(1)(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>company</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– in the Companies Acts</td>
<td>section 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– in sections 131 to 133 of the 1985 Act</td>
<td>section 133(4) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– in Chapter 2 of Part 12 of the 1985 Act</td>
<td>section 410(5) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– in sections 425 and 426 of the 1985 Act</td>
<td>section 425(6)(a) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– in Chapter 2 of Part 28</td>
<td>section 938(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the company communications provisions</td>
<td>section 1108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>company records (in Part 37)</td>
<td>section 1100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>compromise or arrangement (in section 427A of, and Schedule 15B to, the 1985 Act)</td>
<td>section 427A(8) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>connected with, in relation to a director (in Part 10)</td>
<td>sections 252 to 254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the Consequential Provisions Act</td>
<td>section 744 of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>constitution, of a company</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– in the Companies Acts</td>
<td>section 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– in Part 10</td>
<td>section 257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>controlling, of a body corporate by a director (in Part 10)</td>
<td>section 255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corporation</td>
<td>section 1138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the court</td>
<td>section 1122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>credit institution</td>
<td>section 1138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>credit transaction (in Chapter 4 of Part 10)</td>
<td>section 201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>daily default fine</td>
<td>section 1091</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date of creation of a charge (in Chapter 2 of Part 12 of the 1985 Act)</td>
<td>section 410(5) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>date of the offer (in Part 13A of the 1985 Act)</td>
<td>section 428(6A) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>debenture</td>
<td>section 744 of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>debt securities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expression</td>
<td>Definition and Section(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>derivative claim (in Chapter 1 of Part 11)</td>
<td>paragraph 8(4) of Schedule 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>derivative proceedings (in Chapter 2 of Part 11)</td>
<td>paragraph 12(7) of Schedule 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Directive disclosure requirements</td>
<td>section 260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>derivative claim</td>
<td>section 265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>derivative proceedings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>director</td>
<td>section 250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>director in the Companies Acts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>director in Chapter 1 of Part 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>director in Chapter 2 of Part 11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>director in Part 15</td>
<td>section 385(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>directors’ remuneration report</td>
<td>section 426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>director’s report (in Schedule 15B to the 1985 Act)</td>
<td>paragraph 3(a) of Schedule 15B to the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distributable profits</td>
<td>section 1044</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distributable profits in Chapter 6 of Part 5 of the 1985 Act</td>
<td>section 152(1)(b) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distributable profits in Chapter 7 of Part 5 of the 1985 Act</td>
<td>section 181 of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distribution</td>
<td>section 263(2) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distribution in Chapter 6 of Part 5 of the 1985 Act</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distribution in Part 8 of the 1985 Act</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>document</td>
<td>section 1079(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>document in Part 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>document in the company communications provisions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dormant, in relation to a company or other body corporate</td>
<td>section 1134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>draft terms (in Schedule 15B to the 1985 Act)</td>
<td>paragraph 2(1)(a) of Schedule 15B to the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EEA State and related expressions</td>
<td>section 1135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>electronic form, electronic copy, electronic means</td>
<td>section 1132(3) and (4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>electronic form, electronic copy, electronic means for the purposes of the Companies Acts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>electronic form, electronic copy, electronic means in relation to communications to a company</td>
<td>Part 3 of Schedule 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expression</td>
<td>Reference</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— in relation to communications by a company other than a traded company</td>
<td>Part 3 of Schedule 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— in relation to communications by a traded company</td>
<td>Part 3 of Schedule 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eligible members, in relation to a written resolution</td>
<td>section 296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>employees’ share scheme</td>
<td>section 743 of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>enactment</td>
<td>section 1257</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equity security (in sections 89 to 96 of the 1985 Act)</td>
<td>section 94(2) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equity share capital</td>
<td>section 744 of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>existing company</td>
<td>section 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>expert’s report (in Schedule 15B to the 1985 Act)</td>
<td>paragraph 3(d) of Schedule 15B to the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fellow subsidiary undertakings</td>
<td>section 1126(4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>financial assistance (in Chapter 6 of Part 5 of the 1985 Act)</td>
<td>section 152(1)(a) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>financial institution</td>
<td>section 1138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>financial year, of a company</td>
<td>section 396</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>firm</td>
<td>section 1138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the former Companies Acts</td>
<td>section 1136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the Gazette</td>
<td>section 1138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group (in Part 16)</td>
<td>section 482(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>group undertaking</td>
<td>section 1126(5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hard copy form and hard copy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— for the purposes of the Companies Acts</td>
<td>section 1132(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— in relation to communications to a company</td>
<td>Part 2 of Schedule 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— in relation to communications by a company other than a traded company</td>
<td>Part 2 of Schedule 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— in relation to communications by a traded company</td>
<td>Part 2 of Schedule 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hire-purchase agreement</td>
<td>section 744 of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Term</td>
<td>Section(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>holder of shares, in relation to an offer to allot securities</td>
<td>section 94(7) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>holding company</td>
<td>section 736 of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IAS accounts</td>
<td>sections 401(1)(b) and 409(1) and (2)(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IAS group accounts</td>
<td>section 409(1) (and 2)(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IAS individual accounts</td>
<td>section 401(1)(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IAS Regulation (in Part 16)</td>
<td>section 482(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>included in the consolidation, in relation to group accounts</td>
<td>section 482(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>independent examiner</td>
<td>section 494</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>individual accounts</td>
<td>section 400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the insider dealing legislation</td>
<td>section 744 of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the Insolvency Act</td>
<td>section 735A(1) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insurance company</td>
<td>section 742C of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>insurance market activity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— in Part 16</td>
<td>section 482(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— in Part 17</td>
<td>section 553</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>interest in shares (for the purposes of Part 23)</td>
<td>section 823</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>international accounting standards (in Part 16)</td>
<td>section 482(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>issued shares and issued share capital</td>
<td>section 560(1)(a) and (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the Joint Stock Companies Acts</td>
<td>section 1136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liabilities (in section 427A of, and Schedule 15B to, the 1985 Act)</td>
<td>section 427A(8) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>limited by guarantee</td>
<td>section 3(3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>limited by shares</td>
<td>section 3(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>limited company</td>
<td>section 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>listing rules (in Part 16)</td>
<td>section 482(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>major audit (in sections 536 and 539)</td>
<td>section 539(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>market purchase, by a company of its own shares (in Chapter 7 of</td>
<td>section 163 of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 5 of the 1985 Act</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expression</td>
<td>Section/Schedule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>member, of a company</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— in the Companies Acts</td>
<td>section 112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— in Chapter 1 of Part 11</td>
<td>section 260(5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— in Chapter 2 of Part 11</td>
<td>section 265(7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>memorandum of association</td>
<td>section 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>negative resolution procedure, in relation to regulations and orders</td>
<td>section 1253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-cash asset</td>
<td>section 739(1) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>non-voting shares (in Part 13A of the 1985 Act)</td>
<td>section 430H(1) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>number, in relation to shares</td>
<td>section 744 of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>off-market purchase, by a company of its own shares (in Chapter 7 of Part 5 of the 1985 Act)</td>
<td>section 163 of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>offer period (in Chapter 2 of Part 28)</td>
<td>section 938(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>offer to the public (in Chapter 1 of Part 21)</td>
<td>section 769</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>offeror</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— in Part 13A of the 1985 Act</td>
<td>section 428(8) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— in Chapter 2 of Part 28</td>
<td>section 938(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>officer, in relation to a body corporate</td>
<td>section 744 of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>officer in default</td>
<td>section 1087</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>official seal, of registrar</td>
<td>section 1028</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opted-in company (in Chapter 2 of Part 28)</td>
<td>section 938(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opting-in resolution (in Chapter 2 of Part 28)</td>
<td>section 933(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>opting-out resolution (in Chapter 2 of Part 28)</td>
<td>section 933(5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ordinary resolution</td>
<td>section 289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>organisation (in Part 15)</td>
<td>section 385(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>other relevant transactions or arrangements (in Chapter 4 of Part 10)</td>
<td>section 209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overseas company</td>
<td>section 1011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>overseas branch register</td>
<td>section 129(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paid up and related expressions</td>
<td>section 738 of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expression</td>
<td>Section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the Panel (in Part 28)</td>
<td>section 909</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parent company</td>
<td>section 1138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parent undertaking</td>
<td>section 1127 and Schedule 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>payment for loss of office (in Chapter 4 of Part 10)</td>
<td>section 214</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>period for appointing auditors, in relation to a private company</td>
<td>section 499(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>period for filing, in relation to accounts and reports for a financial year</td>
<td>section 450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>permissible capital payment (in Chapter 7 of Part 5 of the 1985 Act)</td>
<td>section 181 of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>political donation (in Part 15)</td>
<td>section 370</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>political expenditure (in Part 15)</td>
<td>section 371</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>political organisation (in Part 15)</td>
<td>section 369(2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pre-existing transferee company (in section 427A of, and Schedule 15B to, the 1985 Act)</td>
<td>section 427A(8) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the principal register (in Schedule 14 to the 1985 Act)</td>
<td>paragraph 2(1) of Schedule 14 to the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>private company</td>
<td>section 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>profit and loss account (in Part 16)</td>
<td>section 482(1) and (2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>profits and losses (in Part 8 of the 1985 Act)</td>
<td>section 280(3) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>profits available for distribution (for the purposes of Part 8 of the 1985 Act)</td>
<td>section 263(3) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>property (in section 427A of, and Schedule 15B to, the 1985 Act)</td>
<td>section 427A(8) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>protected information</td>
<td>section 240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>provision for entrenchment</td>
<td>section 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>public company</td>
<td>section 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>publication, in relation to accounts and reports (in sections 441 to 443)</td>
<td>section 444</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qualified, in relation to an auditor’s report etc (in Part 17)</td>
<td>section 553</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qualifying shares (in Chapter 7 of Part 5 of the 1985 Act)</td>
<td>section 162ZC(2) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expression</td>
<td>Section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qualifying third party indemnity provision</td>
<td>234</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qualifying pension scheme indemnity provision</td>
<td>235</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quasi-loan (in Chapter 4 of Part 10)</td>
<td>199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>quoted company</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– in Part 14</td>
<td>367</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– in Part 16</td>
<td>391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– in Chapter 5 of Part 17</td>
<td>545 (and section 391)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>redeemable shares</td>
<td>159 of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>redenominate</td>
<td>636(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>redenomination reserve</td>
<td>642</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the register</td>
<td>1046</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>register of charges, kept by registrar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– in England and Wales and Northern Ireland</td>
<td>401 of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– in Scotland</td>
<td>417 of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>register of directors</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>register of directors’ residential addresses</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>register of secretaries (in case of public company)</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>registered number, of a branch of an overseas company</td>
<td>1033</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>registered number, of a company</td>
<td>1032</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>registered office, of a company</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>registrar and registrar of companies</td>
<td>1026</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>registrar’s index of company names</td>
<td>1065</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>registrar’s rules</td>
<td>1083</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>registration in a particular part of the United Kingdom</td>
<td>1026(4)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regulated activity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– in Part 16</td>
<td>482(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– in Part 17</td>
<td>553</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>regulated market</td>
<td>1138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expression</td>
<td>Section</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relevant employee shares (in sections 89 to 96 of the 1985 Act)</td>
<td>section 94(4) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>relevant shares (in sections 89 to 96 of the 1985 Act)</td>
<td>section 94(5) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>requirements of this Act</td>
<td>section 1137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resolution for reducing share capital</td>
<td>section 135(3) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the scheme (in section 427A of, and Schedule 15B to, the 1985 Act)</td>
<td>section 427A(8) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>securities (in Chapter 1 of Part 21)</td>
<td>section 768(5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>senior statutory auditor</td>
<td>section 518</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sent or supplied, in relation to documents or information (in the company communications provisions)</td>
<td>section 1114(2) and (3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>service address</td>
<td>section 1106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>service contract, of a director</td>
<td>section 227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shadow director</td>
<td>section 251</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>share</td>
<td>section 744 of the 1985 Act and section 1126(2) of this Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— in the Companies Acts</td>
<td>section 801</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— in Part 23</td>
<td>section 1127(7)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>share capital (company having a)</td>
<td>section 559</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>share exchange ratio (in Schedule 15B to the 1985 Act)</td>
<td>paragraph 2(2)(b) of Schedule 15B to the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>share premium account</td>
<td>section 130(1) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>share warrant</td>
<td>section 188 of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>small companies regime, for accounts and reports</td>
<td>section 387</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>special notice, in relation to a resolution</td>
<td>section 319</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>special resolution</td>
<td>section 290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subsidiary</td>
<td>section 736 of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subsidiary undertaking</td>
<td>section 1127 and Schedule 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>summary financial statement</td>
<td>section 432</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>takeover bid (in Chapter 2 of Part 28)</td>
<td>section 938(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>takeover offer (in Part 13A of the 1985 Act)</td>
<td>section 428(1) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expression</td>
<td>Section of Act/Section Numbers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the Takeovers Directive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— in Chapter 1 of Part 28</td>
<td>section 910(8)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— in Chapter 2 of Part 28</td>
<td>section 938(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>traded company (in the company communications provisions)</td>
<td>section 1114(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trading certificate</td>
<td>section 774(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transfer, in relation to a non-cash asset</td>
<td>section 739(2) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transferor company (in section 427A of, and Schedule 15B to, the 1985 Act)</td>
<td>section 427A(8) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transferee company (in section 427A of, and Schedule 15B to, the 1985 Act)</td>
<td>section 427A(8) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>treasury shares</td>
<td>section 162A(3) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turnover</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— in Part 16</td>
<td>section 482(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— in Part 17</td>
<td>section 553</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncalled share capital</td>
<td>section 737(2) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unconditional, in relation to a contract to acquire shares (in Part 13A of the 1985 Act)</td>
<td>section 430H(2) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>undistributable reserves</td>
<td>section 264(3) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>undertaking</td>
<td>section 1126(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unique identifier</td>
<td>section 1048</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unlimited company</td>
<td>section 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unquoted company (in Part 16)</td>
<td>section 391</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voting rights</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— in Chapter 2 of Part 28</td>
<td>section 938(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— in Part 13A of the 1985 Act</td>
<td>section 430H(1) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voting shares</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— in Chapter 2 of Part 28</td>
<td>section 938(1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— in Part 13A of the 1985 Act</td>
<td>section 430H(1) of the 1985 Act</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>website, communication by means of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— in relation to communications by a company other than a traded company</td>
<td>Part 4 of Schedule 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>— in relation to communications by a traded company</td>
<td>Part 4 of Schedule 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Application for recognition of supervisory body

1 (1) A supervisory body may apply to the Secretary of State for an order declaring it to be a recognised supervisory body for the purposes of this Part of this Act (“a recognition order”).

(2) Any such application must be—
   (a) made in such manner as the Secretary of State may direct, and
   (b) accompanied by such information as the Secretary of State may reasonably require for the purpose of determining the application.

(3) At any time after receiving an application and before determining it the Secretary of State may require the applicant to furnish additional information.

(4) The directions and requirements given or imposed under sub-paragraphs (2) and (3) may differ as between different applications.

(5) The Secretary of State may require any information to be furnished under this paragraph to be in such form or verified in such manner as he may specify.

(6) Every application must be accompanied by—
   (a) a copy of the applicant’s rules, and
   (b) a copy of any guidance issued by the applicant in writing.

(7) The reference in sub-paragraph (6)(b) to guidance issued by the applicant is a reference to any guidance or recommendation—
   (a) issued or made by it to all or any class of its members or persons seeking to become members,
   (b) relevant for the purposes of this Part, and
   (c) intended to have continuing effect,
   including any guidance or recommendation relating to the admission or expulsion of members of the body, so far as relevant for the purposes of this Part.
Grant and refusal of recognition

2 (1) The Secretary of State may, on an application duly made in accordance with paragraph 1 and after being furnished with all such information as he may require under that paragraph, make or refuse to make a recognition order in respect of the applicant.

(2) The Secretary of State may make a recognition order only if it appears to him, from the information furnished by the body and having regard to any other information in his possession, that the requirements of Part 2 of this Schedule are satisfied in the case of that body.

(3) The Secretary of State may refuse to make a recognition order in respect of a body if he considers that its recognition is unnecessary having regard to the existence of one or more other bodies which—
   (a) maintain and enforce rules as to the appointment and conduct of statutory auditors, and
   (b) have been or are likely to be recognised.

(4) Where the Secretary of State refuses an application for a recognition order he must give the applicant a written notice to that effect—
   (a) specifying which requirements, in the opinion of the Secretary of State, are not satisfied, or
   (b) stating that the application is refused on the ground mentioned in sub-paragraph (3).

(5) A recognition order must state the date on which it takes effect.

Revocation of recognition

3 (1) A recognition order may be revoked by a further order made by the Secretary of State if at any time it appears to him—
   (a) that any requirement of Part 2 of this Schedule is not satisfied in the case of the body to which the recognition order relates (“the recognised body”),
   (b) that the body has failed to comply with any obligation imposed on it by or by virtue of this Part of this Act, or
   (c) that the continued recognition of the body is undesirable having regard to the existence of one or more other bodies which have been or are to be recognised.

(2) An order revoking a recognition order must state the date on which it takes effect, which must be after the period of three months beginning with the date on which the revocation order is made.

(3) Before revoking a recognition order the Secretary of State must—
   (a) give written notice of his intention to do so to the recognised body,
   (b) take such steps as he considers reasonably practicable for bringing the notice to the attention of the members of the body, and
   (c) publish the notice in such manner as he thinks appropriate for bringing it to the attention of any other persons who are in his opinion likely to be affected.

(4) A notice under sub-paragraph (3) must—
   (a) state the reasons for which the Secretary of State proposes to act, and
(b) give particulars of the rights conferred by sub-paragraph (5).

(5) A person within sub-paragraph (6) may, within the period of three months beginning with the date of service or publication of the notice under sub-paragraph (3) or such longer period as the Secretary of State may allow, make written representations to the Secretary of State and, if desired, oral representations to a person appointed for that purpose by the Secretary of State.

(6) The persons within this sub-paragraph are—
(a) the recognised body on which a notice is served under sub-paragraph (3),
(b) any member of the body, and
(c) any other person who appears to the Secretary of State to be affected.

(7) The Secretary of State must have regard to any representations made in accordance with sub-paragraph (5) in determining whether to revoke the recognition order.

(8) If in any case the Secretary of State considers it essential to do so in the public interest he may revoke a recognition order without regard to the restriction imposed by sub-paragraph (2), even if—
(a) no notice has been given or published under sub-paragraph (3), or
(b) the period of time for making representations in pursuance of such a notice has not expired.

(9) An order revoking a recognition order may contain such transitional provision as the Secretary of State thinks necessary or expedient.

(10) A recognition order may be revoked at the request or with the consent of the recognised body and any such revocation is not subject to—
(a) the restrictions imposed by sub-paragraphs (1) and (2), or
(b) the requirements of sub-paragraphs (3) to (5) and (7).

(11) On making an order revoking a recognition order in respect of a body the Secretary of State must—
(a) give written notice of the making of the order to the body,
(b) take such steps as he considers reasonably practicable for bringing the making of the order to the attention of the members of the body, and
(c) publish a notice of the making of the order in such manner as he thinks appropriate for bringing it to the attention of any other persons who are in his opinion likely to be affected.

Transitional provision

4 A recognition order made and not revoked under—
(a) paragraph 2(1) of Schedule 11 to the Companies Act 1989 (c. 40), or
(b) paragraph 2(1) of Schedule 11 to the Companies (Northern Ireland) Order 1990 (S.I. 1990/593 (N.I. 5)),
before the commencement of this Chapter of this Part of this Act is to have effect after the commencement of this Chapter as a recognition order made under paragraph 2(1) of this Schedule.
Orders not statutory instruments

5 Orders under this Part of this Schedule shall not be made by statutory instrument.

PART 2

REQUIREMENTS FOR RECOGNITION OF A SUPERVISORY BODY

Holding of appropriate qualification

6 (1) The body must have rules to the effect that a person is not eligible for appointment as a statutory auditor unless—
   (a) in the case of an individual, he holds an appropriate qualification,  
   (b) in the case of a firm—
      (i) each individual responsible for statutory audit work on behalf of the firm is eligible for appointment as a statutory auditor, and
      (ii) the firm is controlled by qualified persons (see paragraph 7 below).

(2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not prevent the body from imposing more stringent requirements.

(3) A firm which has ceased to comply with the conditions mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(b) may be permitted to remain eligible for appointment as a statutory auditor for a period of not more than three months.

7 (1) This paragraph explains what is meant in paragraph 6(1)(b) by a firm being “controlled by qualified persons”.

(2) In this paragraph references to a person being qualified are—
   (a) in relation to an individual, to his holding—
      (i) an appropriate qualification, or
      (ii) a corresponding qualification to audit accounts under the law of a member State, or part of a member State, other than the United Kingdom;
   (b) in relation to a firm, to its—
      (i) being eligible for appointment as a statutory auditor, or
      (ii) being eligible for a corresponding appointment as an auditor under the law of a member State, or part of a member State, other than the United Kingdom.

(3) A firm is to be treated as controlled by qualified persons if, and only if—
   (a) a majority of the members of the firm are qualified persons, and
   (b) where the firm’s affairs are managed by a board of directors, committee or other management body, a majority of that body are qualified persons or, if the body consists of two persons only, at least one of them is a qualified person.

(4) A majority of the members of a firm means—
   (a) where under the firm’s constitution matters are decided upon by the exercise of voting rights, members holding a majority of the rights to vote on all, or substantially all, matters;
(b) in any other case, members having such rights under the constitution of the firm as enable them to direct its overall policy or alter its constitution.

(5) A majority of the members of the management body of a firm means—
(a) where matters are decided at meetings of the management body by the exercise of voting rights, members holding a majority of the rights to vote on all, or substantially all, matters at such meetings;
(b) in any other case, members having such rights under the constitution of the firm as enable them to direct its overall policy or alter its constitution.

(6) Paragraphs 5 to 11 of Schedule 8 to this Act (rights to be taken into account and attribution of rights) apply for the purposes of this paragraph.

Auditors to be fit and proper persons

8 (1) The body must have adequate rules and practices designed to ensure that the persons eligible under its rules for appointment as a statutory auditor are fit and proper persons to be so appointed.

(2) The matters which the body may take into account for this purpose in relation to a person must include—
(a) any matter relating to any person who is or will be employed by or associated with him for the purposes of or in connection with statutory audit work;
(b) in the case of a body corporate, any matter relating to—
(i) any director or controller of the body,
(ii) any other body corporate in the same group, or
(iii) any director or controller of any such other body; and
(c) in the case of a partnership, any matter relating to—
(i) any of the partners,
(ii) any director or controller of any of the partners,
(iii) any body corporate in the same group as any of the partners, or
(iv) any director or controller of any such other body.

(3) Where the person is a limited liability partnership, in sub-paragraph (2)(b) “director” is to be read as “member”.

(4) In sub-paragraph (2)(b) and (c) “controller”, in relation to a body corporate, means a person who either alone or with an associate or associates is entitled to exercise or control the exercise of 15% or more of the rights to vote on all, or substantially all, matters at general meetings of the body or another body corporate of which it is a subsidiary.

Professional integrity and independence

9 (1) The body must have adequate rules and practices designed to ensure that—
(a) statutory audit work is conducted properly and with integrity, and
(b) persons are not appointed as statutory auditors in circumstances in which they have an interest likely to conflict with the proper conduct of the audit.
(2) The body must participate in arrangements within paragraph 21, and the rules and practices mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) must include provision requiring compliance with any standards for the time being determined under such arrangements.

(3) The body must also have adequate rules and practices designed to ensure that no firm is eligible under its rules for appointment as a statutory auditor unless the firm has arrangements to prevent a person to whom sub-paragraph (4) applies from being able to exert any influence over the way in which a statutory audit is conducted in circumstances in which that influence would be likely to affect the independence or integrity of the audit.

(4) This sub-paragraph applies to—
(a) any individual who is not a qualified person within the meaning of paragraph 7, and
(b) any person who is not a member of the firm.

Technical standards

10 (1) The body must have rules and practices as to—
(a) the technical standards to be applied in statutory audit work, and
(b) the manner in which those standards are to be applied in practice.

(2) The body must participate in arrangements within paragraph 22, and the rules and practices mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) must include provision requiring compliance with any standards for the time being determined under such arrangements.

Procedures for maintaining competence

11 The body must have rules and practices designed to ensure that persons eligible under its rules for appointment as a statutory auditor continue to maintain an appropriate level of competence in the conduct of statutory audits.

Monitoring and enforcement

12 (1) The body must have adequate arrangements and resources for the effective monitoring and enforcement of compliance with its rules.

(2) The arrangements for monitoring may make provision for that function to be performed on behalf of the body (and without affecting its responsibility) by any other body or person who is able and willing to perform it.

Independent monitoring of audits of listed companies and other major bodies

13 (1) The body must—
(a) participate in arrangements within paragraph 23(1), and
(b) have rules designed to ensure that members of the body who perform any statutory audit functions in respect of major audits take such steps as may be reasonably required of them to enable their performance of any such functions to be monitored by means of inspections carried out under the arrangements.

(2) Any monitoring of such persons under the arrangements is to be regarded (so far as their performance of statutory audit functions in respect of major
audits is concerned) as monitoring of compliance with the body’s rules for the purposes of paragraph 12(1).

(3) In this paragraph—
    “major audit” means a statutory audit conducted in respect of—
    (a) a company any of whose securities have been admitted to the official list (within the meaning of Part 6 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (c. 8)), or
    (b) any other person in whose financial condition there is a major public interest;

“statutory audit function” means any function performed as a statutory auditor.

Membership, eligibility and discipline

14 The rules and practices of the body relating to—
    (a) the admission and expulsion of members,
    (b) the grant and withdrawal of eligibility for appointment as a statutory auditor, and
    (c) the discipline it exercises over its members,
    must be fair and reasonable and include adequate provision for appeals.

Investigation of complaints

15 (1) The body must have effective arrangements for the investigation of complaints against—
    (a) persons who are eligible under its rules for appointment as a statutory auditor, and
    (b) the body in respect of matters arising out of its functions as a supervisory body.

(2) The arrangements mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) may make provision for the whole or part of that function to be performed by and to be the responsibility of a body or person independent of the body itself.

Independent investigation for disciplinary purposes of public interest cases

16 (1) The body must—
    (a) participate in arrangements within paragraph 24(1), and
    (b) have rules and practices designed to ensure that, where the designated persons have decided that any particular disciplinary action should be taken against a member of the body following the conclusion of an investigation under such arrangements, that decision is to be treated as if it were a decision made by the body in disciplinary proceedings against the member.

(2) In sub-paragraph (1) “the designated persons” means the persons who, under the arrangements, have the function of deciding whether (and if so, what) disciplinary action should be taken against a member of the body in the light of an investigation carried out under the arrangements.
Meeting of claims arising out of audit work

17 (1) The body must have adequate rules or arrangements designed to ensure that persons eligible under its rules for appointment as a statutory auditor take such steps as may reasonably be expected of them to secure that they are able to meet claims against them arising out of statutory audit work.

(2) This may be achieved by professional indemnity insurance or other appropriate arrangements.

Register of auditors and other information to be made available

18 The body must have rules requiring persons eligible under its rules for appointment as a statutory auditor to comply with any obligations imposed on them by—

(a) requirements under section 1188 (Secretary of State’s power to call for information);
(b) regulations under section 1203 (the register of auditors);
(c) regulations under section 1204 (information to be made available to the public).

Taking account of costs of compliance

19 The body must have satisfactory arrangements for taking account, in framing its rules, of the cost to those to whom the rules would apply of complying with those rules and any other controls to which they are subject.

Promotion and maintenance of standards

20 The body must be able and willing—

(a) to promote and maintain high standards of integrity in the conduct of statutory audit work, and
(b) to co-operate, by the sharing of information and otherwise, with the Secretary of State and any other authority, body or person having responsibility in the United Kingdom for the qualification, supervision or regulation of auditors.

PART 3

ARRANGEMENTS IN WHICH RECOGNISED SUPERVISORY BODIES ARE REQUIRED TO PARTICIPATE

Arrangements for setting standards relating to professional integrity and independence

21 The arrangements referred to in paragraph 9(2) are appropriate arrangements—

(a) for the determining of standards for the purposes of the rules and practices mentioned in paragraph 9(1), and
(b) for ensuring that the determination of those standards is done independently of the body.
Arrangements for setting technical standards

22 The arrangements referred to in paragraph 10(2) are appropriate arrangements—
   (a) for the determining of standards for the purposes of the rules and
       practices mentioned in paragraph 10(1), and
   (b) for ensuring that the determination of those standards is done
       independently of the body.

Arrangements for independent monitoring of audits of listed companies and other major bodies

23 (1) The arrangements referred to in paragraph 13(1) are appropriate arrangements—
   (a) for enabling the performance by members of the body of statutory
       audit functions in respect of major audits to be monitored by means
       of inspections carried out under the arrangements, and
   (b) for ensuring that the carrying out of such monitoring and inspections
       is done independently of the body.

   (2) In this paragraph “major audit” and “statutory audit function” have the
       same meaning as in paragraph 13.

Arrangements for independent investigation for disciplinary purposes of public interest cases

24 (1) The arrangements referred to in paragraph 16(1) are appropriate arrangements—
   (a) for the carrying out of investigations into public interest cases arising
       in connection with the performance of statutory audit functions by
       members of the body,
   (b) for the holding of disciplinary hearings relating to members of the
       body which appear to be desirable following the conclusion of such
       investigations,
   (c) for requiring such hearings to be held in public except where the
       interests of justice otherwise require,
   (d) for the persons before whom such hearings have taken place to
       decide whether (and, if so, what) disciplinary action should be taken
       against the members to whom the hearings related, and
   (e) for ensuring that the carrying out of those investigations, the holding
       of those hearings and the taking of those decisions are done
       independently of the body.

   (2) In this paragraph—
       “public interest cases” means matters which raise or appear to raise
       important issues affecting the public interest;
       “statutory audit function” means any function performed as a statutory
       auditor.

Supplementary: arrangements to operate independently of body

25 (1) This paragraph applies for the purposes of—
   (a) paragraph 21(b),
   (b) paragraph 22(b),
   (c) paragraph 23(1)(b), or
(d) paragraph 24(1)(e).

(2) Arrangements are not to be regarded as appropriate for the purpose of ensuring that a thing is done independently of the body unless they are designed to ensure that the body—
   (a) will have no involvement in the appointment or selection of any of
       the persons who are to be responsible for doing that thing, and
   (b) will not otherwise be involved in the doing of that thing.

(3) Sub-paragraph (2) imposes a minimum requirement and does not preclude
the possibility that additional criteria may need to be satisfied in order for
the arrangements to be regarded as appropriate for the purpose in question.

Supplementary: funding of arrangements

26 The body must pay any of the costs of maintaining any arrangements within
paragraph 21, 22, 23 or 24 which the arrangements provide are to be paid by
it.

Supplementary: scope of arrangement

27 Arrangements may qualify as arrangements within any of paragraphs 21,
22, 23 and 24 even though the matters for which they provide are more
extensive in any respect than those mentioned in the applicable paragraph.

SCHEDULE 11

RECOGNISED PROFESSIONAL QUALIFICATIONS

PART 1

GRANT AND REVOCATION OF RECOGNITION OF A PROFESSIONAL QUALIFICATION

Application for recognition of professional qualification

1 (1) A qualifying body may apply to the Secretary of State for an order declaring
    a qualification offered by it to be a recognised professional qualification for
    the purposes of this Part of this Act (“a recognition order”).

(2) In this Part of this Act “a recognised qualifying body” means a qualifying
    body offering a recognised professional qualification.

(3) Any application must be—
    (a) made in such manner as the Secretary of State may direct, and
    (b) accompanied by such information as the Secretary of State may
        reasonably require for the purpose of determining the application.

(4) At any time after receiving an application and before determining it the
    Secretary of State may require the applicant to furnish additional
    information.

(5) The directions and requirements given or imposed under sub-paragraphs
    (3) and (4) may differ as between different applications.
(6) The Secretary of State may require any information to be furnished under this paragraph to be in such form or verified in such manner as he may specify.

(7) In the case of examination standards, the verification required may include independent moderation of the examinations over such a period as the Secretary of State considers necessary.

(8) Every application must be accompanied by—
   (a) a copy of the applicant’s rules, and
   (b) a copy of any guidance issued by the applicant in writing.

(9) The reference in sub-paragraph (8)(b) to guidance issued by the applicant is a reference to any guidance or recommendation—
   (a) issued or made by it to all or any class of persons holding or seeking to hold a qualification, or approved or seeking to be approved by the body for the purposes of giving practical training,
   (b) relevant for the purposes of this Part of this Act, and
   (c) intended to have continuing effect, including any guidance or recommendation relating to a matter within sub-paragraph (10).

(10) The matters within this sub-paragraph are—
   (a) admission to or expulsion from a course of study leading to a qualification,
   (b) the award or deprivation of a qualification, and
   (c) the approval of a person for the purposes of giving practical training or the withdrawal of such an approval, so far as relevant for the purposes of this Part of this Act.

Grant and refusal of recognition

2 (1) The Secretary of State may, on an application duly made in accordance with paragraph 1 and after being furnished with all such information as he may require under that paragraph, make or refuse to make a recognition order in respect of the qualification in relation to which the application was made.

(2) The Secretary of State may make a recognition order only if it appears to him, from the information furnished by the applicant and having regard to any other information in his possession, that the requirements of Part 2 of this Schedule are satisfied in relation to the qualification to which the recognition order relates.

(3) Where the Secretary of State refuses an application for a recognition order he must give the applicant a written notice to that effect specifying which requirements, in his opinion, are not satisfied.

(4) A recognition order must state the date on which it takes effect.

Revocation of recognition

3 (1) A recognition order may be revoked by a further order made by the Secretary of State if at any time it appears to him—
   (a) that any requirement of Part 2 of this Schedule is not satisfied in relation to the qualification to which the recognition order relates, or
(b) that the qualifying body has failed to comply with any obligation imposed on it by or by virtue of this Part of this Act.

(2) An order revoking a recognition order must state the date on which it takes effect, which must be after the period of three months beginning with the date on which the revocation order is made.

(3) Before revoking a recognition order the Secretary of State must—
   (a) give written notice of his intention to do so to the qualifying body,
   (b) take such steps as he considers reasonably practicable for bringing the notice to the attention of persons holding the qualification or in the course of studying for it, and
   (c) publish the notice in such manner as he thinks appropriate for bringing it to the attention of any other persons who are in his opinion likely to be affected.

(4) A notice under sub-paragraph (3) must—
   (a) state the reasons for which the Secretary of State proposes to act, and
   (b) give particulars of the rights conferred by sub-paragraph (5).

(5) A person within sub-paragraph (6) may, within the period of three months beginning with the date of service or publication or such longer period as the Secretary of State may allow, make written representations to the Secretary of State and, if desired, oral representations to a person appointed for that purpose by the Secretary of State.

(6) The persons within this sub-paragraph are—
   (a) the qualifying body on which a notice is served under sub-paragraph (3),
   (b) any person holding the qualification or in the course of studying for it, and
   (c) any other person who appears to the Secretary of State to be affected.

(7) The Secretary of State must have regard to any representations made in accordance with subsection (5) in determining whether to revoke the recognition order.

(8) If in any case the Secretary of State considers it essential to do so in the public interest he may revoke a recognition order without regard to the restriction imposed by sub-paragraph (2), even if—
   (a) no notice has been given or published under sub-paragraph (3), or
   (b) the period of time for making representations in pursuance of such a notice has not expired.

(9) An order revoking a recognition order may contain such transitional provision as the Secretary of State thinks necessary or expedient.

(10) A recognition order may be revoked at the request or with the consent of the qualifying body and any such revocation is not subject to—
   (a) the restrictions imposed by sub-paragraphs (1) and (2), or
   (b) the requirements of sub-paragraphs (3) to (5) and (7).

(11) On making an order revoking a recognition order the Secretary of State must—
   (a) give written notice of the making of the order to the qualifying body,
(b) take such steps as he considers reasonably practicable for bringing the making of the order to the attention of persons holding the qualification or in the course of studying for it, and

(c) publish a notice of the making of the order in such manner as he thinks appropriate for bringing it to the attention of any other persons who are in his opinion likely to be affected.

**Transitional provision**

4 A recognition order made and not revoked under—

(a) paragraph 2(1) of Schedule 12 to the Companies Act 1989 (c. 40), or

(b) paragraph 2(1) of Schedule 12 to the Companies (Northern Ireland) Order 1990 (S.I. 1990/593 (N.I. 5)),

before the commencement of this Chapter of this Part of this Act is to have effect after the commencement of this Chapter as a recognition order made under paragraph 2(1) of this Schedule.

**Orders not statutory instruments**

5 Orders under this Part of this Schedule shall not be made by statutory instrument.

**PART 2**

**REQUIREMENTS FOR RECOGNITION OF A PROFESSIONAL QUALIFICATION**

**Entry requirements**

6 (1) The qualification must only be open to persons who—

(a) have attained university entrance level, or

(b) have a sufficient period of professional experience.

(2) In relation to a person who has not been admitted to a university or other similar establishment in the United Kingdom, "attaining university entrance level" means—

(a) being educated to such a standard as would entitle him to be considered for such admission on the basis of—

(i) academic or professional qualifications obtained in the United Kingdom and recognised by the Secretary of State to be of an appropriate standard, or

(ii) academic or professional qualifications obtained outside the United Kingdom which the Secretary of State considers to be of an equivalent standard, or

(b) being assessed, on the basis of written tests of a kind appearing to the Secretary of State to be adequate for the purpose (with or without oral examination), as of such a standard of ability as would entitle him to be considered for such admission.

(3) The assessment, tests and oral examination referred to in sub-paragraph (2)(b) may be conducted by—

(a) the qualifying body, or

(b) some other body approved by the Secretary of State.
(4) The reference in sub-paragraph (1)(b) to “a sufficient period of professional experience” is to not less than seven years’ experience in a professional capacity in the fields of finance, law and accountancy.

Requirement for theoretical instruction or professional experience

7 (1) The qualification must be restricted to persons who—
   (a) have completed a course of theoretical instruction in the subjects prescribed for the purposes of paragraph 8, or
   (b) have a sufficient period of professional experience.

(2) The reference in sub-paragraph (1)(b) to “a sufficient period of professional experience” is to not less than seven years’ experience in a professional capacity in the fields of finance, law and accountancy.

Examination

8 (1) The qualification must be restricted to persons who have passed an examination (at least part of which is in writing) testing—
   (a) theoretical knowledge of the subjects prescribed for the purposes of this paragraph by regulations made by the Secretary of State, and
   (b) ability to apply that knowledge in practice, and requiring a standard of attainment at least equivalent to that required to obtain a degree from a university or similar establishment in the United Kingdom.

(2) The qualification may be awarded to a person without his theoretical knowledge of a subject being tested by examination if he has passed a university or other examination of equivalent standard in that subject or holds a university degree or equivalent qualification in it.

(3) The qualification may be awarded to a person without his ability to apply his theoretical knowledge of a subject in practice being tested by examination if he has received practical training in that subject which is attested by an examination or diploma recognised by the Secretary of State for the purposes of this paragraph.

(4) Regulations under this paragraph are subject to negative resolution procedure.

Practical training

9 (1) The qualification must be restricted to persons who have completed at least three years’ practical training of which—
   (a) part was spent being trained in statutory audit work, and
   (b) a substantial part was spent being trained in statutory audit work or other audit work of a description approved by the Secretary of State as being similar to statutory audit work.

(2) For the purpose of sub-paragraph (1) “statutory audit work” includes the work of a person appointed as the auditor of a person under the law of a country or territory outside the United Kingdom where it appears to the Secretary of State that the law and practice with respect to the audit of accounts is similar to that in the United Kingdom.
(3) The training must be given by persons approved by the body offering the qualification as persons whom the body is satisfied, in the light of undertakings given by them and the supervision to which they are subject (whether by the body in itself or some other body or organisation), will provide adequate training.

(4) At least two-thirds of the training must be given by a person—
   (a) eligible for appointment as a statutory auditor, or
   (b) eligible for a corresponding appointment as an auditor under the law of a member State, or part of a member State, other than the United Kingdom.

Supplementary provision with respect to a sufficient period of professional experience

10 (1) Periods of theoretical instruction in the fields of finance, law and accountancy may be deducted from the required period of professional experience, provided the instruction—
   (a) lasted at least one year, and
   (b) is attested by an examination recognised by the Secretary of State for the purposes of this paragraph;
but the period of professional experience may not be so reduced by more than four years.

(2) The period of professional experience together with the practical training required in the case of persons satisfying the requirement in paragraph 7 by virtue of having a sufficient period of professional experience must not be shorter than the course of theoretical instruction referred to in that paragraph and the practical training required in the case of persons satisfying the requirement of that paragraph by virtue of having completed such a course.

The body offering the qualification

11 (1) The body offering the qualification must have—
   (a) rules and arrangements adequate to ensure compliance with the requirements of paragraphs 6 to 10, and
   (b) adequate arrangements for the effective monitoring of its continued compliance with those requirements.

(2) The arrangements must include arrangements for monitoring—
   (a) the standard of the body’s examinations, and
   (b) the adequacy of the practical training given by the persons approved by it for that purpose.

SCHEDULE 12

ARRANGEMENTS IN WHICH REGISTERED THIRD COUNTRY AUDITORS ARE REQUIRED TO PARTICIPATE

Arrangements for independent monitoring of audits of traded non-Community companies

1 (1) The arrangements referred to in section 1206(1)(a) are appropriate arrangements—
(a) for enabling the performance by the registered third country auditor of third country audit functions to be monitored by means of inspections carried out under the arrangements, and
(b) for ensuring that the carrying out of such monitoring and inspections is done independently of the registered third country auditor.

(2) In this paragraph “third country audit function” means any function performed as a third country auditor.

Arrangements for independent investigations for disciplinary purposes

2 (1) The arrangements referred to in section 1206(1)(b) are appropriate arrangements—
(a) for the carrying out of investigations into matters arising in connection with the performance of third country audit functions by the registered third country auditor,
(b) for the holding of disciplinary hearings relating to the registered third country auditor which appear to be desirable following the conclusion of such investigations,
(c) for requiring such hearings to be held in public except where the interests of justice otherwise require,
(d) for the persons before whom such hearings have taken place to decide whether (and, if so, what) disciplinary action should be taken against the registered third country auditor, and
(e) for ensuring that the carrying out of those investigations, the holding of those hearings and the taking of those decisions are done independently of the registered third country auditor.

(2) In this paragraph—
“disciplinary action” includes the imposition of a fine; and
“third country audit function” means any function performed as a third country auditor.

Supplementary: arrangements to operate independently of third country auditor

3 (1) This paragraph applies for the purposes of—
(a) paragraph 1(1)(b), or
(b) paragraph 2(1)(e).

(2) Arrangements are not to be regarded as appropriate for the purpose of ensuring that a thing is done independently of the registered third country auditor unless they are designed to ensure that the registered third country auditor—
(a) will have no involvement in the appointment or selection of any of the persons who are to be responsible for doing that thing, and
(b) will not otherwise be involved in the doing of that thing.

(3) Sub-paragraph (2) imposes a minimum requirement and does not preclude the possibility that additional criteria may need to be satisfied in order for the arrangements to be regarded as appropriate for the purpose in question.
Supplementary: funding of arrangements

4 (1) The registered third country auditor must pay any of the costs of maintaining any relevant arrangements which the arrangements provide are to be paid by it.

(2) For this purpose “relevant arrangements” are arrangements within paragraph 1 or 2 in which the registered third country auditor is obliged to participate.

Supplementary: scope of arrangements

5 Arrangements may qualify as arrangements within either of paragraphs 1 and 2 even though the matters for which they provide are more extensive in any respect than those mentioned in the applicable paragraph.

Specification of particular arrangements by the Secretary of State

6 (1) If there exist two or more sets of arrangements within paragraph 1 or within paragraph 2, the obligation of a registered third country auditor under section 1206(1)(a) or (b), as the case may be, is to participate in such set of arrangements as the Secretary of State may by order specify.

(2) An order under sub-paragraph (1) is subject to negative resolution procedure.

SCHEDULE 13

SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISIONS WITH RESPECT TO DELEGATION ORDER

Operation of this Schedule

1 (1) This Schedule has effect in relation to a body designated by a delegation order under section 1216 as follows—

(a) paragraphs 2 to 12 have effect in relation to the body where it is established by the order;

(b) paragraphs 2 and 6 to 11 have effect in relation to the body where it is an existing body;

(c) paragraph 13 has effect in relation to the body where it is an existing body that is an unincorporated association.

(2) In their operation in accordance with sub-paragraph (1)(b), paragraphs 2 and 6 apply only in relation to—

(a) things done by or in relation to the body in or in connection with the exercise of functions transferred to it by the delegation order, and

(b) functions of the body which are functions so transferred.

(3) Any power conferred by this Schedule to make provision by order is a power to make provision by an order under section 1216.

Status

2 The body is not to be regarded as acting on behalf of the Crown and its members, officers and employees are not to be regarded as Crown servants.
Name, members and chairman

3 (1) The body is to be known by such name as may be specified in the delegation order.

(2) The body is to consist of such persons (not being less than eight) as the Secretary of State may appoint after such consultation as he thinks appropriate.

(3) The chairman of the body is to be such person as the Secretary of State may appoint from among its members.

(4) The Secretary of State may make provision by order as to—
   (a) the terms on which the members of the body are to hold and vacate office;
   (b) the terms on which a person appointed as chairman is to hold and vacate the office of chairman.

Financial provisions

4 (1) The body must pay to its chairman and members such remuneration, and such allowances in respect of expenses properly incurred by them in the performance of their duties, as the Secretary of State may determine.

(2) As regards any chairman or member in whose case the Secretary of State so determines, the body must pay or make provision for the payment of—
   (a) such pension, allowance or gratuity to or in respect of that person on his retirement or death, or
   (b) such contributions or other payment towards the provision of such a pension, allowance or gratuity,
   as the Secretary of State may determine.

(3) Where—
   (a) a person ceases to be a member of the body otherwise than on the expiry of his term of office, and
   (b) it appears to the Secretary of State that there are special circumstances which make it right for that person to receive compensation,
   the body must make a payment to him by way of compensation of such amount as the Secretary of State may determine.

Proceedings

5 (1) The delegation order may contain such provision as the Secretary of State considers appropriate with respect to the proceedings of the body.

(2) The delegation order may, in particular—
   (a) authorise the body to discharge any functions by means of committees consisting wholly or partly of members of the body;
   (b) provide that the validity of proceedings of the body, or of any such committee, is not affected by any vacancy among the members or any defect in the appointment of any member.
Fees

6 (1) The body may retain fees payable to it.

(2) The fees must be applied for—
   (a) meeting the expenses of the body in discharging its functions, and
   (b) any purposes incidental to those functions.

(3) Those expenses include any expenses incurred by the body on such staff, accommodation, services and other facilities as appear to it to be necessary or expedient for the proper performance of its functions.

(4) In prescribing the amount of fees in the exercise of the functions transferred to it the body must prescribe such fees as appear to it sufficient to defray those expenses, taking one year with another.

(5) Any exercise by the body of the power to prescribe fees requires the approval of the Secretary of State.

(6) The Secretary of State may, after consultation with the body, by order vary or revoke any regulations prescribing fees made by the body.

Legislative functions

7 (1) Regulations or an order made by the body in the exercise of the functions transferred to it must be made by instrument in writing, but not by statutory instrument.

(2) The instrument must specify the provision of this Part of this Act under which it is made.

(3) The Secretary of State may by order impose such requirements as he thinks necessary or expedient as to the circumstances and manner in which the body must consult on any regulations or order it proposes to make.

(4) Nothing in this Part applies to make regulations or an order made by the body subject to negative resolution procedure or affirmative resolution procedure.

8 (1) Immediately after an instrument is made it must be printed and made available to the public with or without payment.

(2) A person is not to be taken to have contravened any regulation or order if he shows that at the time of the alleged contravention the instrument containing the regulation or order had not been made available as required by this paragraph.

9 (1) The production of a printed copy of an instrument purporting to be made by the body on which is endorsed a certificate signed by an officer of the body authorised by it for the purpose and stating—
   (a) that the instrument was made by the body,
   (b) that the copy is a true copy of the instrument, and
   (c) that on a specified date the instrument was made available to the public as required by paragraph 8,

is evidence (or, in Scotland, sufficient evidence) of the facts stated in the certificate.
(2) A certificate purporting to be signed as mentioned in sub-paragraph (1) is to be deemed to have been duly signed unless the contrary is shown.

(3) Any person wishing in any legal proceedings to cite an instrument made by the body may require the body to cause a copy of it to be endorsed with such a certificate as is mentioned in this paragraph.

Report and accounts

10 (1) The body must, at least once in each calendar year for which the delegation order is in force, make a report to the Secretary of State on—
   (a) the discharge of the functions transferred to it, and
   (b) such other matters as the Secretary of State may by order require.

(2) The delegation order may modify subsection (1) as it has effect in relation to the calendar year in which the order comes into force or is revoked.

(3) The Secretary of State must lay before Parliament copies of each report received by him under this paragraph.

(4) The following provisions of this paragraph apply as follows—
   (a) sub-paragraphs (5) and (6) apply only where the body is established by the order, and
   (b) sub-paragraphs (7) and (8) apply only where the body is an existing body.

(5) The Secretary of State may, with the consent of the Treasury, give directions to the body with respect to its accounts and the audit of its accounts.

(6) A person may only be appointed as auditor of the body if he is eligible for appointment as a statutory auditor.

(7) Unless the body is a company to which section 226 of the Companies Act 1985 (c. 6) (duty to prepare individual company accounts) applies, the Secretary of State may, with the consent of the Treasury, give directions to the body with respect to its accounts and the audit of its accounts.

(8) Whether or not the body is a company to which section 226 of the Companies Act 1985 applies, the Secretary of State may direct that any provisions of that Act specified in the directions are to apply to the body, with or without any modifications so specified.

Other supplementary provisions

11 (1) The transfer of a function to a body designated by a delegation order does not affect anything previously done in the exercise of the function transferred; and the resumption of a function so transferred does not affect anything previously done in exercise of the function resumed.

(2) The Secretary of State may by order make such transitional and other supplementary provision as he thinks necessary or expedient in relation to the transfer or resumption of a function.

(3) The provision that may be made in connection with the transfer of a function includes, in particular, provision—
   (a) for modifying or excluding any provision of this Part of this Act in its application to the function transferred;
(b) for applying to the body designated by the delegation order, in connection with the function transferred, any provision applying to the Secretary of State which is contained in or made under any other enactment;
(c) for the transfer of any property, rights or liabilities from the Secretary of State to that body;
(d) for the carrying on and completion by that body of anything in the process of being done by the Secretary of State when the order takes effect;
(e) for the substitution of that body for the Secretary of State in any instrument, contract or legal proceedings.

(4) The provision that may be made in connection with the resumption of a function includes, in particular, provision—
(a) for the transfer of any property, rights or liabilities from that body to the Secretary of State;
(b) for the carrying on and completion by the Secretary of State of anything in the process of being done by that body when the order takes effect;
(c) for the substitution of the Secretary of State for that body in any instrument, contract or legal proceedings.

12 Where a delegation order is revoked, the Secretary of State may by order make provision—
(a) for the payment of compensation to persons ceasing to be employed by the body established by the delegation order;
(b) as to the winding up and dissolution of the body.

13 (1) This paragraph applies where the body is an unincorporated association.
(2) Any relevant proceedings may be brought by or against the body in the name of any body corporate whose constitution provides for the establishment of the body.
(3) In sub-paragraph (2) “relevant proceedings” means proceedings brought in or in connection with the exercise of any transferred function.
(4) In relation to proceedings brought as mentioned in sub-paragraph (2), any reference in paragraph 11(3)(e) or (4)(c) to the body replacing or being replaced by the Secretary of State in any legal proceedings is to be read with the appropriate modifications.

SCHEDULE 14

STATUTORY AUDITORS: CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

Companies (Audit, Investigations and Community Enterprise) Act 2004 (c. 27)

1 (1) Section 16 of the Companies (Audit, Investigations and Community Enterprise) Act 2004 (grants to bodies concerned with accounting standards etc) is amended as follows.
(2) In subsection (2)—
(a) in paragraph (f) for “paragraph 17” to the end substitute “paragraph 21, 22, 23(1) or 24(1) of Schedule 10 to the Company Law Reform Act 2006;”,

(b) in paragraph (g) for “Part 2 of that Act” substitute “Part 42 of that Act”.

(3) In subsection (5), in the definition of “professional accountancy body”—

(a) in paragraph (a) for “Part 2 of the Companies Act 1989 (c. 40)” substitute “Part 42 of the Company Law Reform Act 2006”, and

(b) in paragraph (b) for “section 32” substitute “section 1184”.

SCHEDULE 15

Section 1236

TRANSPARENCY OBLIGATIONS AND RELATED MATTERS: MINOR AND CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

PART 1

AMENDMENTS OF THE FINANCIAL SERVICES AND MARKETS ACT 2000

1 Part 6 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (listing and other matters) is amended as follows.

2 In section 73 (general duty of competent authority), after subsection (1) insert—

“(1A) To the extent that those general functions are functions under or relating to transparency rules, subsection (1)(c) and (f) have effect as if the references to a regulated market were references to a market.”

3 In section 73A (Part 6 Rules), after subsection (5) insert—

“(6) Transparency rules and corporate governance rules are not listing rules, disclosure rules or prospectus rules, but are Part 6 rules.”

4 For the cross-heading before section 90 substitute “Compensation for false or misleading statements etc”.

5 For the heading to section 90 substitute “Compensation for statements in listing particulars or prospectus”.

6 (1) Section 91 (penalties for breach of Part 6 rules) is amended as follows.

(2) For subsection (1) substitute—

“(1) If the competent authority considers that—

(a) an issuer of listed securities, or

(b) an applicant for listing,

has contravened any provision of listing rules, it may impose on him a penalty of such amount as it considers appropriate.

(1ZA) If the competent authority considers that—

(a) an issuer who has requested or approved the admission of a financial instrument to trading on a regulated market,
(b) a person discharging managerial responsibilities within such an issuer, or
(c) a person connected with such a person discharging managerial responsibilities,
has contravened any provision of disclosure rules, it may impose on him a penalty of such amount as it considers appropriate.”

(3) After subsection (1A) insert—

“(1B) If the competent authority considers—
(a) that a person has contravened—
   (i) a provision of transparency rules or a provision otherwise made in accordance with the transparency obligations directive, or
   (ii) a provision of corporate governance rules, or
(b) that a person on whom a requirement has been imposed under section 89J (power to suspend or prohibit trading of securities in case of infringement of applicable transparency obligation), has contravened that requirement,
it may impose on the person a penalty of such amount as it considers appropriate.”.

(4) In subsection (2) for “(1)(a), (1)(b)(ii) or (1A)” substitute “(1), (1ZA)(a), (1A) or (1B)”.

7 In section 96B (persons discharging managerial responsibilities and connected persons)—
(a) for the heading substitute “Disclosure rules: persons responsible for compliance”;
(b) in subsection (1) for “For the purposes of this Part” substitute “for the purposes of the provisions of this Part relating to disclosure rules”.

8 In section 97(1) (appointment by the competent authority of persons to carry out investigations), for paragraphs (a) and (b) substitute—

“(a) there may have been a contravention of—
   (i) a provision of this Part or of Part 6 rules, or
   (ii) a provision otherwise made in accordance with the prospectus directive or the transparency obligations directive;
(b) a person who was at the material time a director of a person mentioned in section 91(1), (1ZA)(a), (1A) or (1B) has been knowingly concerned in a contravention by that person of—
   (i) a provision of this Part or of Part 6 rules, or
   (ii) a provision otherwise made in accordance with the prospectus directive or the transparency obligations directive;”.

9 In section 99 (fees) after subsection (1B) insert—

“(1C) Transparency rules may require the payment of fees to the competent authority in respect of the continued admission of financial instruments to trading on a regulated market.”.

(1) Section 103(1) (interpretation of Part 6) is amended as follows.


(3) At the appropriate place insert—

“voteholder information” has the meaning given by section 89B(2);”.

PART 2

AMENDMENTS OF THE COMPANIES (AUDIT, INVESTIGATIONS AND COMMUNITY ENTERPRISE) ACT 2004

Chapter 2 of Part 1 of the Companies (Audit, Investigations and Community Enterprise) Act 2004 (accounts and reports) is amended as follows.

(1) Section 14 (supervision of periodic accounts and reports of issuers of listed securities) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (2)(a)—

(a) for “listed” substitute “transferable”;
(b) for “listing” substitute “Part 6”.

(3) In subsection (3)(a)—

(a) for “listed” substitute “transferable”;
(b) for “listing” substitute “Part 6”.

(4) In subsection (7)(b) for “listed” substitute “transferable”.

(5) In subsection (12)—

(a) for ““listed securities” and “listing rules” have” substitute ““Part 6 rules” has”;
(b) for the definition of “issuer” substitute—

““issuer” has the meaning given by section 102A(6);”;
(c) in the definition of “periodic” for “listing” substitute “Part 6”;
(d) at the end add—

““transferable securities” has the meaning given by section 102A(3) of that Act.”.

(1) Section 15 (application of certain company law provisions to bodies appointed under section 14) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (5)(a)—

(a) for “listed” substitute “transferable”;
(b) for “listing” substitute “Part 6”.

(3) In subsection (5B)(a)—

(a) for “listed” substitute “transferable”;
(b) for “listing” substitute “Part 6”.

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40
(4) In subsection (6)(b) for “‘listing rules’ and “security’” substitute “‘Part 6 rules’ and “transferable securities’”.

SCHEDULE 16

REPEALS

Company law repeals (Great Britain)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Short title and chapter</th>
<th>Extent of repeal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Companies Act 1985 (c. 6)</td>
<td>Sections 1 to 88.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Section 95.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sections 97 and 98.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sections 117 and 118.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sections 120 and 121.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In section 122(1)—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(a) paragraphs (a) to (d);</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) the words “consolidated, divided, converted, sub-divided,” and “, or the stock reconverted”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sections 123 and 124.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Section 127(5).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In section 128—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(a) in subsection (3), the words from “otherwise than” to “section 380”, and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) in subsection (4), the words from “(otherwise than” to “above)”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In section 129—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(a) in subsection (1), the words from “with rights which” to “section 380 applies”,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) in subsection (2), the words from “otherwise than” to “section 380”, and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(c) in subsection (3), the words from “(otherwise than” to “above)”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In section 135(2), the words following paragraph (c).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Section 138(5) and (6).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In section 141, “and liable to a fine”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In section 143(2) in subsection (2), the words “the company is liable” to “or both; and,”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sections 155 to 158.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Section 162A(2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Section 169(4), (5) and (7) to (9).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Section 183(4) to (6).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sections 190 and 191.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sections 198 to 262A.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In section 281, “or rule of law”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sections 282 to 361.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sections 363 to 394A.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In section 426(7), the words “; and any person” to the end.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In section 427(5), the words “; and if default is made” to the end.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short title and chapter</td>
<td>Extent of repeal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Companies Act 1985 (c. 6)—cont.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 430A(4).</td>
<td>Section 437—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In section 437—</td>
<td>(a) in subsection (1), the second sentence, and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 438.</td>
<td>(b) subsections (1B) and (1C).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In section 439—</td>
<td>(a) in subsection (2), “, or is ordered to pay the whole or any part of the costs of proceedings brought under section 438”,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 442(2).</td>
<td>(b) subsections (3) and (7), and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 446.</td>
<td>(c) in subsection (8), “; and any such liability imposed by subsection (2) is (subject as mentioned above) a liability also to indemnify all persons against liability under subsection (3)”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In section 448(7), the words “and liable to a fine.” to the end.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 449(7).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 450(4).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 451(3).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 453(1A)(b).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 453A(6).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In section 461(5), the words “; and if a company makes default” to the end.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 651.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In section 652A(1), the word “private”.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In section 652E—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) in subsection (1), “and liable to a fine”, and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) in subsection (2), “and liable to imprisonment or a fine, or both”.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In section 652F(2), “and liable to a fine”.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sections 653.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sections 675 to 677.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sections 680 to 720.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sections 722 to 723F.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sections 725 to 734</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 735.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 735B.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sections 740 to 742A.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 743A.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Section 745.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short title and chapter</td>
<td>Extent of repeal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Companies Act 1985 (c. 6)** — cont. | Schedule 1.  
In Schedule 2, Part 2.  
Schedules 3 to 11.  
Schedule 13.  
Schedule 15A.  
Schedules 21 to 24. |
| **Insolvency Act 1986 (c. 45)** | In Schedule 10, in the entry relating to section 201(4), the word “office”.  
In Schedule 13, in Part 1, the entries relating to the following provisions of the Companies Act 1985—  
(a) section 13(4),  
(b) section 44(7), and  
(c) section 156(3). |
| **Financial Services Act 1986 (c. 60)** | In Schedule 16, paragraph 20. |
| **Companies Act 1989 (c. 40)** | Sections 1 to 22.  
Section 56(5).  
Sections 57 and 58.  
Section 64(2).  
Section 66(3).  
Section 71.  
Sections 92 to 107.  
Section 108(1) to (3).  
Section 109(1) and (2).  
Section 110.  
Section 113.  
Section 114(1).  
Sections 115 to 123.  
Sections 125 and 126.  
Section 127(1), (2), (4), (6) and (7).  
Section 128.  
Section 129(1).  
Section 130(1) to (5).  
Sections 133 and 134.  
Section 136.  
Section 137(1).  
Section 138.  
Section 139(1) to (3).  
Section 142.  
In section 143, subsections (1) and (4) to (11).  
In section 207(4), the second sentence.  
Schedules 1 to 9.  
In Schedule 10, paragraphs 1, 3, 10, 11, 12 to 15, 18(7), 19 to 21, 23 and 24.  
Schedules 15 and 16.  
In Schedule 17, paragraphs 1 to 4 and 7.  
In Schedule 19, paragraphs 2 to 9, 12 to 14, 17, 18 and 21. |
| **Age of Legal Capacity (Scotland) Act 1991 (c. 50)** | In Schedule 1, paragraph 39. |
| **Charities Act 1993 (c. 10)** | In Schedule 6, paragraph 20. |
### Repeals and revocations relating to Northern Ireland

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Short title and chapter</th>
<th>Extent of repeal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Welsh Language Act 1993</strong> (c. 38)</td>
<td>Section 30(3) and (6).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Deregulation and Contracting Out Act 1994</strong> (c. 40)</td>
<td>In Schedule 5, paragraph 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Requirements of Writing (Scotland) Act 1995</strong> (c. 7)</td>
<td>In Schedule 16, paragraph 8.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Criminal Procedure (Consequential Provisions) (Scotland) Act 1995</strong> (c. 40)</td>
<td>In Schedule 4, paragraphs 51 to 54.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disability Discrimination Act 1995</strong> (c. 50)</td>
<td>In Schedule 4, paragraph 56(3) and (4).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Financial Services and Markets Act 2000</strong> (c. 8)</td>
<td>Section 143.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Political Parties, Elections and Referendums Act 2000</strong> (c. 41)</td>
<td>Sections 139 and 140.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Criminal Justice and Police Act 2001</strong> (c. 16)</td>
<td>Schedule 19.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Enterprise Act 2002</strong> (c. 40)</td>
<td>Section 45.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Companies (Audit, Investigations and Community Enterprise) Act 2004</strong> (c. 27)</td>
<td>In Schedule 2, paragraph 17.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Civil Partnership Act 2004</strong> (c. 33)</td>
<td>In Schedule 17, paragraph 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Constitutional Reform Act 2005</strong> (c. 4)</td>
<td>In Schedule 11, in paragraph 4(3), the reference to the Companies Act 1985.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Repeals and revocations relating to Northern Ireland

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Short title and chapter</th>
<th>Extent of repeal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Companies (Northern Ireland) Order 1986</strong> (S.I. 1986/1032 (N.I. 6))</td>
<td>The whole Order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Companies Consolidation (Consequential Provisions) (Northern Ireland) Order 1986</strong> (S.I. 1986/1035 (N.I. 9))</td>
<td>The whole Order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Business Names (Northern Ireland) Order 1986</strong> (S.I. 1986/1033 (N.I. 7))</td>
<td>The whole Order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Short title and chapter</td>
<td>Extent of repeal or revocation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Companies (Northern Ireland) Order 1989 (S.I. 1989/2404 (N.I. 18))</td>
<td>The whole Order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989 (S.I. 1989/2405 (N.I. 19))</td>
<td>In Schedule 7, in the entry relating to Article 166(4), the word “office”.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>European Economic Interest Groupings Regulations (Northern Ireland) 1989 (S.R. 1989/216)</td>
<td>In Schedule 9, Part I.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Companies (Northern Ireland) Order 1990 (S.I. 1990/593 (N.I. 5))</td>
<td>The whole Order.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Companies (No. 2) (Northern Ireland) Order 1990 (S.I. 1990/1504 (N.I. 10))</td>
<td>Parts II to IV.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Part VI.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Schedules 1 to 6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Criminal Justice Act 1993 (c. 36)</td>
<td>In Schedule 5, Part 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Schedule 6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deregulation and Contracting Out Act 1994 (c. 40)</td>
<td>Section 13(2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Schedule 2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In Schedule 5, paragraph 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Youth Justice and Criminal Evidence Act 1999 (c. 23)</td>
<td>In Schedule 4, paragraph 18.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limited Liability Partnerships Act (Northern Ireland) 2002 (c. 12 (N.I.))</td>
<td>The whole Act.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Company Directors Disqualification (Northern Ireland) Order 2002 (S.I. 2002/3150 (N.I. 4))</td>
<td>In Schedule 3, paragraphs 3 to 5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Companies (Audit, Investigations and Community Enterprise) Act 2004 (c. 27)</td>
<td>Section 11(2).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>In Schedule 2, paragraphs 11 to 15.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Short title and chapter | Extent of repeal or revocation
---|---
*Other repeals*

#### Short title and chapter | Extent of repeal or revocation
---|---
**Limited Partnerships Act 1907 (c. 24)** | In section 16(1)—  
(a) the words “, and there shall be paid for such inspection such fees as may be appointed by the Board of Trade, not exceeding 5p for each inspection”;  
(b) the words from “and there shall be paid for such certificate” to the end.  
In section 17—  
(a) the words “(but as to fees with the concurrence of the Treasury)”;  
(b) paragraph (a).  
**Business Names Act 1985 (c. 7)** | The whole Act.  
**Companies Act 1989 (c. 40)** | Sections 24 to 54.  
Schedules 11 to 13.  
**Companies (Audit, Investigations and Community Enterprise) Act 2004 (c. 27)** | Sections 1 to 6.  
In Schedule 2, Part 1.  
| **5** |  
| **10** |  
| **15** |  
| **20** |  
| **25** |  
| **30** |
A BILL [AS AMENDED IN STANDING COMMITTEE D]

To reform company law and restate the greater part of the enactments relating to companies; to make other provision relating to companies and other forms of business organisation; to make provision about directors’ disqualification, business names, auditors and actuaries; to amend Part 9 of the Enterprise Act 2002; and for connected purposes.

Brought from the Lords 24th May 2006.

Ordered, by The House of Commons, to be Printed, 20th July 2006.